IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9

Installation and Support Guide for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux on POWER

GC26-7705-01

IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9

Installation and Support Guide for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux on POWER

GC26-7705-01

Note:
Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page 215.

Second Edition (March 2005)

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2005. All rights reserved.
US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figures vii

Tables ix

About this document xi
FAStT product renaming xi
Who should read this document xii
DS4000 installation process overview xii
DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 library xiii
How this document is organized xiv
Notices used in this document xv
Getting information, help and service xv
Before you call xv
Using the documentation xvi
Web sites xvi
How to send your comments xvii

Chapter 1. Introduction 1
Product updates 3
Overview of DS4000 Storage Manager 4
The storage management station 4
DS4000 Storage Manager online help 4
What's new 5
Storage Manager 9.1 limitations 8
Overview of DS4000 Storage Manager software packages 8
SMruntime software package 9
SMclient software package 9
SMagent software package 10
SMutil software package 10
Failover drivers 10
Software installation sequence 10
Storage subsystem management methods 11
In-band (host-agent) management method 11
Out-of-band (direct) management method 13
Reviewing a sample network 15
Installation process diagram 16
Setting up IP addresses for DS4000 storage controllers 20
Setting up the DHCP/BOOTP server and network 20
Steps for assigning static TCP/IP addresses to the DS4000 controllers . . . 20
DS4100 and DS4300 storage server usage notes 21
DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning 21
Performance planning: Configuration examples 22
DS4000 Storage Manager premium features 22
Premium copy services features 23
Storage Partitioning premium feature 24
FC/SATA Intermix premium feature 25
Enabling your premium features 26

Chapter 2. Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems 27
Hardware, software and host system requirements 27
DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements 27
AIX system requirements 30

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

AIX restrictions 31
Installing DS4000 Storage Manager 32
Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard 32
Installing Storage Manager packages manually 33
Configuring storage subsystems 35
Adding storage subsystems to SMClient 35
Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM 35
Storage Partitioning: Defining an AIX host group 39
Mapping LUNS to a storage partition 41
Creating direct and SAN-attached configurations 41
Creating a direct-attached configuration 42
Creating a SAN-attached configuration 42
Installing the RDAC failover driver 43
Prerequisites. 43
Installing the RDAC driver 43
Identifying devices on AIX hosts 45
Performing initial device discovery 45
Verifying the installation and configuration 47
Identifying the controller ID numbers 47
Identifying device names and bus numbers 48
Identifying logical drives by operating system device names 53
Identifying FlashCopy logical drive types 54
Viewing and setting Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes 55
Attribute definitions 55
Using the lsattr command to view ODM attributes 61
Additional AIX configuration information 62
Disabling DS4000 cache mirroring 62
Using fast I/O failure for Fibre Channel devices 63
Using dynamic tracking of Fibre Channel devices 64
Using dynamic capacity expansion and dynamic volume expansion 64
Resolving disk array errors 66
Redistributing logical drives in case of failure 68

Chapter 3. Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems 69
Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements 69
DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements 69
HP-UX system requirements 72
Installing DS4000 Storage Manager 73
Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard 73
Installing Storage Manager packages manually 74
Configuring storage subsystems 77
Adding storage subsystems to SMclient 78
Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM 78
Storage Partitioning: Defining an HP-UX host group 82
Mapping LUNs to a storage partition 83
Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations 84
Creating a direct-attached configuration 84
Creating a SAN-attached configuration 84
Enabling multipath I/O with PV-links 84
Using PV-links: Method 1 85
Using PV-links: Method 2 87
Redistributing logical drives in case of failure 90

Chapter 4. Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems 91

Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements 91
DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements 91
Solaris system requirements 94
Installing DS4000 Storage Manager 95
Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard 95
Installing Storage Manager packages manually 96
Configuring storage subsystems 100
Adding storage subsystems to SMclient 100
Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM 101
Storage Partitioning: Defining a Solaris host group 104
Mapping LUNS to a storage partition 105
Mapping LUNs to a new partition 105
Mapping LUNs to an existing storage partition 106
Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations 106
Creating a direct-attached configuration 106
Creating a SAN-attached configuration. 107
Configuring the host bus adapter cards 107
Installing the JNI adapter driver package 107
Modifying the HBA settings and binding the HBAs 109
Installing the QLogic adapter driver package 115
Verifying the HBA installation 116
Modifying the QLogic HBA settings 116
Installing a failover driver on Solaris 117
Installing the RDAC failover driver 117
Installing the DMP failover driver 119
Verifying external storage 130
Redistributing logical drives in case of failure 130

Chapter 5. Installing and configuring storage management software on POWER-based Linux host systems 133
Hardware, firmware and system requirements 133
DS4000 requirements 133
SUSE Enterprise Linux Server (SLES 9) system requirements 136
Red Hat Enterprise Linux system requirements 136
Restrictions. 137
SUSE Enterprise Linux Server (SLES 9) restrictions. 137
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL 3) restrictions 138
Downloading the HBA driver and utility packages 139
Downloading the SLES 9 HBA driver and utility packages. 139
Downloading the RHEL 3 HBA driver utility packages 140
Installing DS4000 Storage Manager and utilities 141
Installing Storage Manager on a RHEL 3 host 141
Configuring storage subsystems 145
Adding storage subsystems to SMclient 145
Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM 146
Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations 150
Storage Partitioning: Defining a host group 151
Mapping LUNS to a storage partition 154
Configuring the host bus adapter drivers 155
Installing the RDAC Multipath Proxy driver (RHEL 3 only). 158
Performing initial device identification 160
Performing initial device identification on SLES 9 hosts 160
Performing initial device identification on RHEL 3 hosts 163
Performing common maintenance tasks 166
Performing SLES 9 maintenance tasks 166
Performing RHEL 3 maintenance tasks 169

Chapter 6. Completing the software configuration 171
Overview of heterogeneous host configurations 171
Configuring storage subsystems 171
Performing an initial automatic discovery of storage subsystems 171
Creating logical drives from free or unconfigured capacity. 173
Configuring alert notifications 175
Renaming storage subsystems 176
Creating a storage subsystem profile 176
Performing other storage subsystem management tasks 176

Chapter 7. DS4000 Storage Manager with high-availability cluster services 179
General information. 179
Using cluster services on HP-UX systems 180
Using cluster services on Solaris systems 180
General hardware requirements 180
System dependencies 180
Using cluster services on AIX systems. 181
General hardware requirements 181
High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing 182
Parallel System Support Programs and General Parallel File System . . . 182
GPFS, PSSP, and HACMP cluster configuration diagrams 183

Appendix A. MC/Service Guard configuration details 191

Appendix B. JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings 193
JNI HBA card settings 193
QLogic HBA card settings 196

Appendix C. Downloading ESM firmware and drive firmware 197
Verifying and downloading ESM firmware. 197
Verifying current ESM firmware version 197
Downloading ESM firmware. 198
Downloading drive firmware. 200
Downloading Storage Manager version 9.10 drive firmware 200
Downloading Storage Manager version 8.x drive firmware 202

Appendix D. Additional DS4000 documentation 203
DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server library 203
DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server library 204
DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server library 205
DS4100 SATA Storage Server library 206
Other DS4000 and DS4000-related documents 207

Appendix E. Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment 209

Appendix F. Limitations. 211
AIX. 211
HP-UX 211
Solaris 213

Notices 215
Trademarks. 216

Glossary 217

Index 227

Figures

1. Installation process flow by current publications xiii
2. In-band managed storage subsystems 12
3. Out-of-band managed storage subsystems 14
4. Sample network using both out-of-band and in-band managed storage subsystems 16
5. Installation process (part 1) 17
6. Installation process (part 2) 18
7. Installation process (part 3) 19
8. DS4000/AIX system configuration. 45
9. Controller Properties window 48
10. Change Mappings window 54
11. Sample SMdevices command output (method 1) 86
12. Sample SMdevices command output (method 2) 87
13. Enterprise Management window. 172
14. Create Logical Drive — Introduction window 173
15. Cluster configuration with single DS4000 storage server — one to four partitions. 184
16. Cluster configuration with three DS4000 storage servers — one partition per DS4000 185
17. Cluster configuration with four DS4000 storage servers — one partition per DS4000 186
18. RVSD cluster configuration with two DS4000 storage servers — two partitions per DS4000 187
19. HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration with one DS4000 storage server — one partition 188
20. HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration with two DS4000 storage servers — two partitions per DS4000. 189
21. Fibre channel fabric switch environment connecting host servers to a DS4000 Storage Server 209

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Tables

1. Mapping of FAStT names to DS4000 Series names . . . xi
2. TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9.1 titles by user tasks. . . . xiii
3. Current Storage Manager firmware versions by server and environment . . . 1
4. Installation sequences of DS4000 Storage Manager software packages by host type . . . 10
5. Maximum number of logical drives per partition. . . . 21
6. Examples of possible configurations with more than 32 logical drives . . . 22
7. Using Storage Partitioning with DS4000 storage servers . . . 24
8. DS4000 storage servers that are used with AIX systems . . . 28
9. Supported versions of hardware for AIX systems . . . 29
10. Minimum firmware and device driver versions for concurrent download (AIX) . . . 36
11. File sets required for AIX 5.1 RDAC . . . 43
12. File sets required for AIX 5.2 RDAC . . . 44
13. File sets required for AIX 5.3 RDAC . . . 44
14. Attributes for dar devices . . . 56
15. Attributes for dac devices. . . . 57
16. Attributes for hdisk devices . . . 58
17. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with HP-UX systems . . . 70
18. Supported versions of hardware for HP-UX systems . . . 71
19. HP-UX kernel parameter configuration requirements . . . 72
20. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (HP-UX) . . . 81
21. Sample record of logical drive preferred and alternate paths . . . 88
22. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with Solaris systems. . . . 92
23. Hardware you can use with Solaris systems . . . 93
24. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (Solaris) . . . 103
25. JNI model numbers and configuration files . . . 107
26. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with POWER-based Linux host systems . . . 134
27. Hardware that is supported with POWER-based Linux hosts . . . 135
28. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (Linux on POWER) . . . 148
29. HACMP software requirements . . . 182
30. PSSP and GPFS software requirements. . . . 182
31. Configuration settings for FCI-1063 . . . 193
32. Configuration settings for FCE-1473/FCE-6460/FCX2-6562/FCC2-6562 . . . 193
33. Configuration settings for FCE-1063/FCE2-1063/FCE-6410/FCE2-6410 . . . 194
34. Configuration settings for FC64-1063 . . . 195
35. Configuration settings for QL2342 . . . 196
36. TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks . . . 203
37. TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks . . . 204
38. TotalStorage DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks . . . 205
39. TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server document titles by user tasks . . . 206
40. TotalStorage DS4000 and DS4000–related document titles by user tasks . . . 207

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

About this document

This document provides information about how to set up, install, configure, and work with the IBM® TotalStorage® DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9.1 in AIX®, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux on POWER™.

Use this document to:

- Determine the hardware and software that is required to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software into your subsystem network
- Install the DS4000 Storage Manager software
- Upgrade the controller's nonvolatile storage random access memory (NVSRAM) and firmware
- Configure the host subsystem
- Identify management features that are unique to your specific installation

Notes:

1. This document does not cover hardware installation or integration. For information about these topics, see the DS4000 Installation and Support Guide that is appropriate for your storage server. See Appendix D, "Additional DS4000 documentation," on page 203 for a list of these documents.
2. The controller firmware (version 06.1x.xx.xx or later) and NVSRAM that are included with IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9.1 support only the following DS4000 storage servers:
   - **DS4100** standard (base) option; Machine Type 1724; Model 100
   - **DS4300** standard (base) and Turbo options; Machine Type 1722; Models 60U/60X
   - **DS4400**; Machine Type 1742; Models 1RU/1RX
   - **DS4500**; Machine Type 1742; Models 90U/90X
3. You cannot use controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx with the following DS4000 storage servers:
   - DS4100 — SCU models
   - DS4300 — SCU models
   - FAStT200
   - FAStT500

   To find the firmware versions that you can use with these storage servers, see Table 3 on page 1. Please contact your IBM reseller or representative regarding any future availability of 6.1x.xx.xx controller firmware for these storage servers.

FAStT product renaming

IBM is in the process of renaming some FAStT family products. Table 1 identifies each new DS4000 product name with its corresponding FAStT product name. Note that this change of **product name only** indicates no change in functionality or warranty. All products listed below with new names are functionally-equivalent and fully-interoperable. Each DS4000 product retains full IBM service as outlined in service contracts issued for analogous FAStT products.

Table 1. Mapping of FAStT names to DS4000 Series names

Current FAStT Product Name	New DS4000 Product Name
IBM TotalStorage FAStT Storage Server	IBM TotalStorage DS4000

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 1. Mapping of FAStT names to DS4000 Series names (continued)

Current FAStT Product Name	New DS4000 Product Name
FAStT	DS4000
FAStT Family	DS4000 Mid-range Disk System
FAStT Storage Manager vX.Y (for example v9.10)	DS4000 Storage Manager vX.Y (for example v9.10)
FAStT100	DS4100
FAStT600	DS4300
FAStT600 with Turbo Feature	DS4300 Turbo
FAStT700	DS4400
FAStT900	DS4500
EXP700	DS4000 EXP700
EXP710	DS4000 EXP710
EXP100	DS4000 EXP100
FAStT FlashCopy	FlashCopy for DS4000
FAStT VolumeCopy	VolumeCopy for DS4000
FAStT Remote Mirror (RM)	Enhanced Remote Mirroring for DS4000
FAStT Synchronous Mirroring	Metro Mirroring for DS4000
	Global Copy for DS4000 (New Feature = Asynchronous Mirroring without Consistency Group)
	Global Mirroring for DS4000 (New Feature = Asynchronous Mirroring with Consistency Group)

Who should read this document

This document is intended for system administrators and storage administrators who are responsible for installing storage management software.

Readers should have knowledge of the following concepts:

- Redundant array of independent disks (RAID)
- Small computer system interface (SCSI)
- Fibre Channel and serial ATA (SATA) technology

Readers should also have working knowledge of the applicable host operating systems that are used with DS4000 Storage Manager.

DS4000 installation process overview

Figure 1 on page xiii gives an overview of the DS4000 hardware and the DS4000 Storage Manager software installation process. Lined arrows in the flow chart indicate consecutive hardware and software installation process steps. Labeled arrows indicate which document provides detailed information about a step.

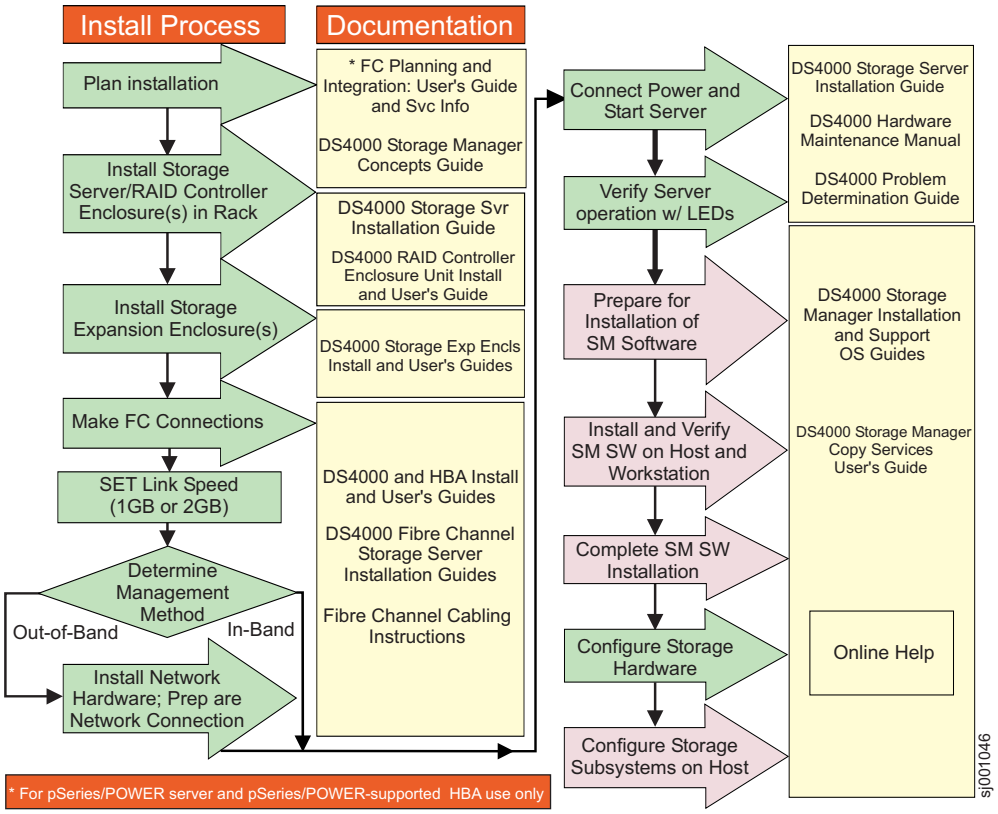


Figure 1. Installation process flow by current publications

DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 library

Table 2 presents an overview of DS4000 Storage Manager product library documents by the common tasks that they address. Click on active links in the tables to access those documents currently available on the Internet. You can access documentation for the other DS4000 products at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/fastt/index.html

Table 2. TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9.1 titles by user tasks

Title	User tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware installation**	**Software installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and administration**	**Diagnosis and maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 Installation and Support Guide for Windows 2000/Server 2003, NetWare, ESX Server, and Linux, GC26-7649	✔		✔	✔		

Table 2. TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9.1 titles by user tasks (continued)

Title	User tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware installation**	**Software installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and administration**	**Diagnosis and maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 Installation and Support Guide for AIX, UNIX, Solaris and Linux on Power, GC26-7648	✓		✓	✓		
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 Copy Services User's Guide, GC26-7660	✓		✓	✓	✓	
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 Concepts Guide, GC26-7661	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

How this document is organized

Chapter 1, "Introduction," on page 1 provides an introduction to the DS4000 Storage Manager product, including information about product resources in addition to this document.

Chapter 2, "Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems," on page 27 provides information about how to install and configure DS4000 Storage Manager with an AIX host operating system.

Chapter 3, "Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems," on page 69 provides information about how to install and configure DS4000 Storage Manager with an HP-UX host operating system.

Chapter 4, "Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems," on page 91 provides information about how to install and configure DS4000 Storage Manager with a Solaris host operating system.

Chapter 5, "Installing and configuring storage management software on POWER-based Linux host systems," on page 133 provides information about how to configure a DS4000 subsystem with a SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 (RHEL 3) operating system on a POWER or pSeries-based host.

Chapter 6, "Completing the software configuration," on page 171 provides step-by-step instructions for post-installation tasks, such as how to create storage arrays, logical drives, and storage partitions.

Chapter 7, "DS4000 Storage Manager with high-availability cluster services," on page 179 provides information about high-availability clustering system options.

Appendix A, “MC/Service Guard configuration details,” on page 191 provides the procedure for how to correct the primary and alternate paths of the imported volume groups that are changed after using vgimport -m -s with LVM commands.

Appendix B, “JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings,” on page 193 provides the correct JNI and QLogic host bus adapter (HBA) settings for Solaris host operating systems.

Appendix C, “Downloading ESM firmware and drive firmware,” on page 197 provides the procedures for verifying and downloading Environmental Service Module (ESM) firmware.

Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209 provides an example of a Fibre Channel fabric switch configuration, and a Web site that contains links to switch documentation.

Notices used in this document

This document contains the following notices that are designed to highlight key information:

Note: These notices provide tips, guidance, or advice.

Important: These notices provide information or advice that might help you avoid inconvenient or problem situations.

Attention: These notices indicate possible damage to programs, devices or data. An attention notice is placed just before the instruction or situation in which damage could occur.

Getting information, help and service

If you need help, service, or technical assistance or just want more information about IBM products, you will find a wide variety of sources available from IBM to assist you. This section contains information about where to go for additional information about IBM and IBM products, what to do if you experience a problem with your system, and whom to call for service, if it is necessary.

Before you call

Before you call, take these steps to try to solve the problem yourself:

- Check all cables to make sure that they are connected.
- Check the power switches to make sure that the system is turned on.
- Use the troubleshooting information in your system documentation, and use the diagnostic tools that come with your system.
- Check for technical information, hints, tips, and new device drivers at the IBM support Web site pages that are listed in this section.
- Use an IBM discussion forum on the IBM Web site to ask questions.

You can solve many problems without outside assistance by following the troubleshooting procedures that IBM provides in the DS4000 Storage Manager online help or in the documents that are provided with your system and software. The information that comes with your system also describes the diagnostic tests that you can perform. Most servers, operating systems, and programs come with information that contains troubleshooting procedures and explanations of error messages and error codes. If you suspect a software problem, see the information for the operating system or program.

Using the documentation

Information about your IBM system and preinstalled software, if any, is available in the documents that come with your system. This includes printed books, online documents, readme files, and help files. See the troubleshooting information in your system documentation for instructions for using the diagnostic programs. The troubleshooting information or the diagnostic programs might tell you that you need additional or updated device drivers or other software.

Web sites

The most up-to-date information about DS4000 storage servers and DS4000 Storage Manager, including documentation and the most recent software, firmware, and NVSRAM downloads, can be found at the following Web sites.

DS4000 Fibre Channel storage servers

Find the latest information about IBM TotalStorage disk storage systems, including all of the DS4000 storage servers:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/

IBM TotalStorage products

Find information about all IBM TotalStorage products:

www.storage.ibm.com/

Support for IBM TotalStorage disk storage systems

Find links to support pages for all IBM TotalStorage disk storage systems, including DS4000 storage servers and expansion units:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

TotalStorage DS4000 interoperability matrix

Find the latest information about operating system and HBA support, clustering support, storage area network (SAN) fabric support, and DS4000 Storage Manager feature support:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/interop-matrix.html

DS4000 Storage Manager readme files

Find the latest readme files for DS4000 Storage Manager by viewing the IBM TotalStorage support page:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your DS4000 storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab. Click the link for **Current recommended Firmware and Storage Manager**. In the tables, find the Storage Manager listing for your operating system and click the **v9.1***x* link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains links to the Storage Manager readme file and software files for your operating system.

Fix delivery center for AIX and Linux on POWER

Find the latest AIX and Linux on POWER information and downloads:

www-912.ibm.com/eserver/support/fixes/fcgui.jsp

In the **Server** drop down menu, select **pSeries family**. Then select your product or fix type.

Linux on pSeries support
Find information about using Linux on pSeries servers:

www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/pseries/linux/

Linux on POWER resource center
Find information about using Linux on POWER servers:

www.ibm.com/servers/enable/linux/power/

Storage Area Network (SAN) support
Find information about using SAN switches, including links to user guides and other documents:

www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/san/index.html

DS4000 technical support
Find downloads, hints and tips, documentation, parts information, HBA and Fibre Channel support:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Premium feature activation
Enable a premium feature on a DS4000 storage server by using the online tool:

www-912.ibm.com/PremiumFeatures/jsp/keyInput.jsp

IBM publications center
Find IBM publications:

www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/

How to send your comments

Your feedback is important to help us provide the highest quality information. If you have any comments about this document, you can submit them in one of the following ways:

- E-mail

  Submit your comments electronically to:

  starpubs@us.ibm.com

  Be sure to include the name and order number of the document and, if applicable, the specific location of the text you are commenting on, such as a page number or table number.
- Mail

  Fill out the Readers' Comments form (RCF) at the back of this document and return it by mail or give it to an IBM representative. If the RCF has been removed, you can address your comments to:

  International Business Machines Corporation
  Information Development
  Department GZW
  9000 South Rita Road
  Tucson Arizona 85744-0001
  U.S.A.

Chapter 1. Introduction

IBM DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.1 host software supports new features that are incorporated into the latest release of controller firmware version 06.1x.xx.xx. IBM DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.1x also manages DS4000 storage servers with all the generally-released controller firmware versions, from 04.01.xx.xx through 05.4x.xx.xx.

Note: Prior to the release of Storage Manager 9.1, controller firmware 05.41.xx.xx was required to support EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosures, and controller firmware 05.42.xx.xx was required to support DS4100 standard (base) SATA storage servers. Storage Manager 9.1, with controller firmware 06.12.xx.xx, now supports DS4100 standard (base) SATA storage servers and EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosures, and is included with their purchase.

DS4100 single-controller (SCU) SATA storage servers require controller firmware 05.42.xx.xx.

All of the controller firmware versions that are listed in Table 3 are available free-of-charge. However, you must purchase a DS4100 single-controller (SCU) storage server to obtain controller firmware 05.42.xx.xx.

See Table 3 for information on latest supported controller firmware code levels available for all DS4000 storage server models. See “What’s new” on page 5 for new features that are associated with the 06.1x.xx.xx controller firmware.

Table 3. Current Storage Manager firmware versions by server and environment

Storage server name	Machine type	Model number	Latest controller firmware version for Fibre Channel environment	Latest controller firmware version for SATA environment
IBM Netfinity Fibre Channel RAID Controller Unit	3526	1RU 1RX	04.01.xx.xx	N/A
DS4100 Single Controller Unit (SCU)	1724	1SX	N/A	05.42.xx.xx
DS4100		100		06.12.xx.xx
FAStT200 High Availability (HA)	3542	2RU 2RX	05.30.xx.xx	N/A
FAStT200		1RU 1RX		
FAStT500	3552	1RU 1RX		

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 3. Current Storage Manager firmware versions by server and environment (continued)

Storage server name	Machine type	Model number	Latest controller firmware version for Fibre Channel environment	Latest controller firmware version for SATA environment
DS4300 Single Controller Unit (SCU)	1722	6LU 6LX	05.34.xx.xx	N/A
DS4300 Base			06.1x.xx.xx	06.12.xx.xx
DS4300 Turbo		60X 60U		
DS4400	1742	1RU 1RX		
DS4500		90U 90X		

This document provides you with information about how to install, configure, and work with DS4000 Storage Manager in the following host environments:

- AIX
- HP-UX
- Solaris
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) on POWER
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL 3) on POWER

Note: For information about installing Storage Manager on other host operating systems, see the *IBM TotalStorage FAStT Storage Manager 9 Installation and Support Guide for Windows 2000/Server 2003, NetWare, ESX Server, and Linux*.

Before you install DS4000 Storage Manager software, consult the following documentation:

readme files

Read these first.

For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your DS4000 storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab. Click the link for **Current recommended Firmware and Storage Manager**. In the tables, find the Storage Manager listing for your operating system and click the **v9.1***x* link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains links to the Storage Manager readme file and software files for your operating system.

Important: Updated readme files contain the latest device driver versions, firmware levels and other information that supersedes this document.

IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide

Use this reference document to become familiar with the terminology and the features of the DS4000 Storage Manager software. This document is available on the DS4000 Storage Manager installation CD and at the Web site listed above.

Product updates

Important

In order to keep your system up to date with the latest firmware and other product updates, use the information below to register and use the **My support** web site.

Download the latest versions of the DS4000 Storage Manager host software, DS4000 storage server controller firmware, DS4000 drive expansion enclosure ESM firmware, and drive firmware at the time of the initial installation and when product updates become available.

To be notified of important product updates, you must first register at the IBM Support and Download Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/index.html

In the **Additional Support** section of the Web page, click **My support**. On the next page, if you have not already done so, register to use the site by clicking **register now**.

Perform the following steps to receive product updates:

1. After you have registered, type your user ID and password to log into the site. The **My support** page opens.
2. Click **add products**. A pull-down menu displays.
3. In the pull-down menu, select **Storage**. Another pull-down menu displays.
4. In the new pull-down menu, and in the subsequent pull-down menus that display, select the following topics:
   - **Computer Storage**
   - **Disk Storage Systems**
   - **TotalStorage DS4000 Midrange Disk Systems & FAStT Stor Srvrs**

   Note: During this process a check list displays. Do not check any of the items in the check list until you complete the selections in the pull-down menus.
5. When you finish selecting the menu topics, place a check in the box for the machine type of your DS4000 series product, as well as any other attached DS4000 series product(s) for which you would like to receive information, then click **Add products**. The **My support** page opens again.
6. On the **My support** page, click the **Edit profile** tab, then click **Subscribe to email**. A pull-down menu displays.
7. In the pull-down menu, select **Storage**. A check list displays.
8. Place a check in each of the following boxes:
   a. **Please send these documents by weekly email**
   b. **Downloads and drivers**
   c. **Flashes**

   and any other topics that you may be interested in, and then click **Update**.
9. Click **Sign out** to log out of My Support.

Overview of DS4000 Storage Manager

IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager consists of a set of client and host tools that enable you to manage the following IBM DS4000 storage subsystems from a storage management station:

- DS4400 Fibre Channel storage subsystems
- DS4500 Fibre Channel storage subsystems
- DS4300 Standard (Base), Turbo, and Single-Controller (SCU) Fibre Channel storage subsystems
- DS4100 Standard (Base) and Single-Controller (SCU) SATA storage subsystems

Note: DS4300 and DS4100 Single-Controller (SCU) storage servers are not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx, or with AIX host operating systems.

DS4000 Storage Manager software is available on the product CD. You can also download DS4000 Storage Manager software from the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level.

The storage management station

The *storage management station* is the system that is responsible for managing all, or a portion of, a storage network. It communicates with the network management agents that reside in the managed nodes using a network management protocol, such as Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

Storage management commands are sent to the storage subsystem controllers, where the controller firmware validates and runs the commands, and then returns status and configuration information to the client software.

A storage management station can be either of the following configurations:

- A remote system, connected to an Ethernet network, that is used to manage one or more storage subsystems
- A host that is connected to the storage subsystem with a Fibre Channel input/output (I/O) path which is also used to manage the attached storage subsystems

Note: Even though you can install the storage management software on a host, the host still uses the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) to communicate with the host-agent. The host-agent communicates with the controller over the Fibre Channel connection through the *access volume*.

DS4000 Storage Manager online help

After you have completed all the installation and configuration procedures that are provided in this document, refer to the following online help systems. The online help contains information that is common to all operating system environments.

You can access the help systems from the Enterprise Management and Subsystem Management windows in DS4000 Storage Manager by clicking **Help** on the toolbar or pressing F1.

Enterprise Management Help window
Use this online help system to learn more about working with the entire management domain.

Subsystem Management Help window
Use this online help system to learn more about managing individual storage subsystems.

What's new

This section describes new DS4000 Storage Manager features and new host operating system capabilities that are available with Storage Manager 9.10 and 9.12.

FAStT product renaming

IBM is in the process of renaming some FAStT family products. For a reference guide that identifies each new DS4000 product name with its corresponding FAStT product name, see "FAStT product renaming" on page xi.

Storage Manager version 9.10 (with firmware 6.10.xx.xx)

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 supports the following new features:

Enhanced Remote Mirroring
In addition to Metro Mirroring, IBM DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.10, with controller firmware level 6.10.11.xx or higher, also supports Global Copy and Global Mirroring Remote Mirror options. Please see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9 Copy Services User's Guide* for more information.

Note: The terms "Enhanced Remote Mirror Option," "Metro/Global Remote Mirror Option," "Remote Mirror," "Remote Mirror Option," and "Remote Mirroring" are used interchangeably throughout this document, the SMclient, and the online help system to refer to remote mirroring functionality.

Parallel hard drive firmware download
You can now download drive firmware packages to multiple drives simultaneously, which minimizes downtime. In addition, all files that are associated with a firmware update are now bundled into a single firmware package. See the Subsystem Management window online help for drive firmware download procedures.

Notes:

1. Drive firmware download is an offline management event. You must schedule downtime for the download because I/O to the storage server is not allowed during the drive firmware download process.
2. Parallel hard drive firmware download is not the same thing as concurrent download.

Staged controller firmware download
You can now download the Storage Manager controller firmware and NVSRAM to DS4300 Turbo and DS4500 storage servers for later activation. Depending on your firmware version, DS4000 storage server model, and host operating system, the following options might be available:

- Controller firmware download only with immediate activation

- Controller firmware download with the option to activate the firmware at a later time

Note: Staged controller firmware download is not supported on DS4400 storage servers.

Subsystem Management Window menu enhancements

Troubleshooting, recovery and maintenance tools are now under the Advanced heading in the Subsystem Management window. The following submenus are available:

- Maintenance
- Troubleshooting
- Recovery

Full command-line interface capability

All of the options that are available in SMclient are also available using either the script editor in the Enterprise Management window, or using your preferred command-line interface. For more information about using the command-line interface, see the Enterprise Management window online help.

Support for DS4300 standard (base) Fibre Channel Storage Servers

Storage Manager 9.10 supports DS4300 Standard (Base) Fibre Channel Storage Servers.

Note: The VolumeCopy, FC/SATA Intermix and Enhanced Remote Mirroring premium features are not supported at this time with the DS4300 Standard (Base) storage server. Also, the DS4300 Standard (Base) storage server is not supported on AIX host operating systems.

DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 supports the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature. This premium feature supports the concurrent attachment of Fibre Channel and SATA storage expansion enclosures to a single DS4000 controller configuration.

With Storage Manager controller firmware 6.10.xx.xx, the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature is enabled using NVSRAM.

Important: With Storage Manager controller firmware 6.12.xx.xx, this premium feature is enabled using a Premium Feature Key. See "FC/SATA Intermix premium feature" on page 25 for important information before installing either the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature or controller firmware 6.12.xx.xx.

For more information about using the Intermix premium feature, including configuration and set-up requirements, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview* (GC26-7713).

Support for DS4000 EXP710 storage expansion enclosures

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 supports DS4000 EXP710 storage expansion enclosures.

Increased support for DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosures

DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosures are now supported on DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Servers.

Also, the DS4100 storage server now supports up to seven EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosures.

DS4000 Storage Manager usability enhancements

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 features the following usability enhancements:

- One-click collection of support data, drive diagnostic data, drive channel state management, controller 'service mode,' and the ability to save host topology information
- Improved media error handling for better reporting of unreadable sectors in the DS4000 storage server event log, and persistent reporting of unreadable sectors

Storage Manager version 9.12 (with firmware 6.12.xx.xx)

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 with firmware 6.12.xx.xx supports all of the features listed in "Storage Manager version 9.10 (with firmware 6.10.xx.xx)" on page 5. In addition, DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 supports the following new features:

DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix update: Premium Feature Key

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 supports enabling of the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature using a Premium Feature Key.

Important: If you are currently using controller firmware version 6.10.xx.xx with the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature enabled, and you want to upgrade to controller firmware version 6.12.xx.xx, see "FC/SATA Intermix premium feature" on page 25 for important information before you install 6.12.xx.xx.

For more information about using the Intermix premium feature, including configuration and set-up requirements, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview* (GC26-7713).

New DS4000 Storage Manager installation option

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 features an installation wizard that enables you to automatically install Storage Manager software packages on your host server.

Note: Using the DS4000 Storage Manager installation wizard requires a system with a graphics card installed. You still have the option of installing the stand-alone host software packages manually. The packages are included with the installation CD.

Support for DS4100 standard (base) SATA Storage Servers

Storage Manager 9.12 supports DS4100 Standard (Base) SATA Storage Servers.

Note: The VolumeCopy, FC/SATA Intermix and Enhanced Remote Mirroring premium features are not supported at this time with the DS4100 Standard (Base) storage server. Also, the DS4100 Standard (Base) storage server is not supported on AIX host operating systems.

DS4000 Storage Manager usability enhancements

DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 features the following usability enhancements:

- Storage Partitioning wizard, which helps you easily create storage partitions

- Task Assistant, which helps guide you through common enterprise and subsystem management tasks
- Ability to extract SMART data for SATA drives

Note: DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.12 (controller firmware 06.12.xx.xx) is not currently supported on POWER-based Linux hosts. You must use Storage Manager version 9.10 (controller firmware 06.10.xx.xx) on POWER-based Linux hosts.

New host operating system information

The following host feature is now available with DS4000 Storage Manager:

- **Support for DS4000 Storage Manager on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3**

  You can install and run DS4000 Storage Manager client software on a POWER-based Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 (RHEL 3) host, and use that host as your storage management station.

Storage Manager 9.1 limitations

Storage Manager 9.1-level controller firmware version 06.1x.xx.xx and corresponding NVSRAM are not supported on the following storage servers.

- FAStT200 (3542, all models)
- FAStT500 (3552, all models)

Therefore, the Storage Manager features that are specific to version 06.1x.xx.xx firmware are unavailable for these DS4000 servers. However, IBM recommends that you do use Storage Manager 9.1 host software to manage these DS4000 servers, using controller firmware versions 5.3x.xx.xx. For more information about which firmware to use with your configuration, see Table 3 on page 1.

Overview of DS4000 Storage Manager software packages

DS4000 Storage Manager contains the following client software packages:

SMruntime software
: DS4000 Storage Manager Java™ compiler

SMclient software
: DS4000 Storage Manager client package

DS4000 Storage Manager contains the following host software packages:

SMagent software
: DS4000 Storage Manager agent package

SMutil software
: DS4000 Storage Manager utility package

RDAC
: DS4000 Storage Manager multipath device drivers

Note: DS4000 Storage Manager client software is not supported on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) on POWER-based hosts. If you have a SLES 9 POWER-based host, you must install the Storage Manager client software on a different server and use that server as your storage management station.

In addition to this document, see the *IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide* for more information about DS4000 Storage Manager software.

SMruntime software package

The DS4000 Storage Manager runtime software, SMruntime, is a Java compiler for the DS4000 Storage Manager client software, SMclient. SMruntime must be installed before SMclient is installed.

SMclient software package

The DS4000 Storage Manager client software, SMclient, is a Java-based graphical user interface (GUI).

SMclient enables you to configure, manage and monitor DS4000 storage servers and storage expansion enclosures in a storage subsystem, either through a host system or through a storage management station.

Specifically, SMclient enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Configure disk arrays and logical volumes
- Assign names to arrays and volume groups
- Assign logical volumes to storage partitions
- Replace and rebuild failed disk drives
- Expand the size of arrays
- Expand the size of logical volumes
- Change RAID-type arrays
- Configure and add additional host partitions with the premium partitioning feature
- Monitor the status of DS4000 storage servers
- Perform troubleshooting and maintenance tasks, such as downloading controller, ESM and drive firmware and NVSRAM
- View the major events log (MEL)
- Assign redundant RAID controllers
- Expand storage capacity using any of the following storage expansion enclosures:
  - DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosure
  - DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosure
  - DS4000 EXP700 Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosure
  - DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosure

Note: For important information about using the DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosure, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* (GC26-7601).

The SMclient contains two main components:

Enterprise Management
This component enables you to add, remove, and monitor storage subsystems in the management domain.

Subsystem Management
This component enables you to manage the components of an individual storage subsystem.

SMagent software package

The DS4000 Storage Manager software agent package, SMagent, contains optional host-agent software, which you can use to manage storage subsystems through the host Fibre Channel connection.

Notes:

1. You must have a failover driver installed in order to use SMagent.
2. SMagent is not supported with controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

SMagent takes requests from a storage management station that is connected to the host through a network connection, and passes the requests to the storage subsystem controllers through the Fibre Channel I/O path.

For more information about managing storage subsystems through SMagent, see “In-band (host-agent) management method” on page 11.

SMutil software package

You can use the DS4000 Storage Manager utility, SMutil, to register and map new logical drives to the operating system.

Install SMutil on all HP-UX and Solaris host systems that are attached to a storage subsystem. The host computers are attached to the storage subsystem through the Fibre Channel.

Failover drivers

AIX, Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) on POWER, and Solaris host systems require one of the following failover drivers for Fibre Channel path redundancy:

AIX, RHEL Redundant Disk Array Controller (RDAC)

Solaris RDAC **or** VERITAS Volume Manager with Dynamic Multipathing (DMP)

The failover driver monitors I/O paths. If a component failure occurs in one of the Fibre Channel paths, the failover driver reroutes all I/O to another path.

Notes:

1. The AIX RDAC driver files are not included on the DS4000 Storage Manager installation CD. To install them, you must download the files from the Web site listed in “Installing the RDAC failover driver” on page 43 and follow the instructions in that section.
2. HP-UX hosts do not require a nonstandard failover driver for multipath configurations. With the standard HP-UX driver, you can enable multipath I/O by using physical volume (PV) links.

Software installation sequence

Install the DS4000 Storage Manager software packages in the sequences shown in Table 4.

Table 4. Installation sequences of DS4000 Storage Manager software packages by host type

Step	AIX	HP-UX	Solaris	RHEL
1	SMruntime	SMruntime	SMruntime	SMruntime
2	SMclient	SMclient	SMclient	SMclient
3	RDAC	SMagent	SMutil	SMutil

Table 4. Installation sequences of DS4000 Storage Manager software packages by host type (continued)

Step	AIX	HP-UX	Solaris	RHEL
4	SMagent	SMutil	RDAC or DMP	RDAC
5			SMagent	SMagent
Location of procedures	"Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 32	"Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 73	"Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 95	"Installing DS4000 Storage Manager and utilities" on page 141

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9: DS4000 Storage Manager client software is not currently available for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (SLES 9) on POWER-based hosts. If you are using a POWER-based SUSE Linux host with your DS4000 subsystem, you must install the Storage Manager client software on an AIX 5L, HP-UX, Solaris, Windows, i386 processor-based Linux server, or RHEL on POWER server, and use that server as your storage management station.

Storage subsystem management methods

The storage management software provides the following two methods for managing storage subsystems:

In-band (host-agent) management method
Using this method, you manage the storage subsystems through the Fibre Channel I/O path to the host.

Out-of-band (direct) management method
Using this method, you manage the storage subsystems directly over the network through the Ethernet connection to each controller.

The management methods are described in the next sections.

In-band (host-agent) management method

When you use the in-band management method, you manage the storage subsystems through the Fibre Channel I/O path to the host.

The management information can be processed by the host or passed to the storage management station through the network connection. Figure 2 on page 12 shows the in-band management method.

Restrictions:

- If both Fibre Channel connections to the controllers are lost, the SMclient software cannot be accessed for problem determination.
- In-band management is not supported with controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

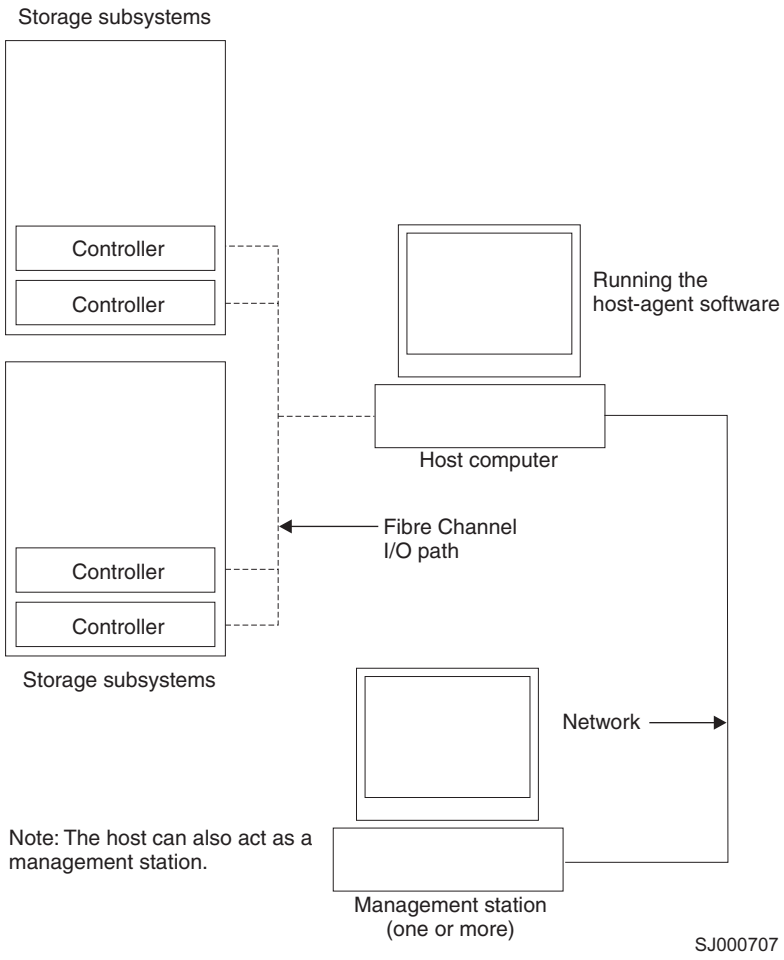


Figure 2. In-band managed storage subsystems

In-band management method advantages

Using the in-band management method provides the following advantages:

- You do not need to run Ethernet cables to the controllers.
- You do not need a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) server to connect the storage subsystems to the network.
- You do not need to configure the controller network (described in Chapter 2, “Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems,” on page 27, Chapter 3, “Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems,” on page 69, or Chapter 4, “Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems,” on page 91).
- When adding devices, you need to specify a host name or Internet Protocol (IP) address for the host only, not for the individual controllers in a storage subsystem. Storage subsystems that are attached to the host are automatically discovered.

In-band management method disadvantages

Using the in-band management method has the following disadvantages:

- If both Fibre Channel connections to the controllers are lost, the SMclient software cannot be accessed for problem determination.

- Unlike out-of-band management, in which the Fibre Channel connections are dedicated for I/O, in-band management uses the Fibre Channel for both I/O and status reporting. Therefore, in-band management uses more bandwidth on the Fibre Channel than out-of-band management, and this can have an impact on performance.
- You are limited to configuring one less LUN than the maximum number allowed by the operating system and host adapter that you are using.
- The host-agent requires a special logical drive, called an *access volume*, to communicate with the controllers in the storage subsystem.

Important: The access volume uses one of the LUNs. If your host already has the maximum number of LUNs configured, either use the out-of-band management method or give up a LUN for use as the access volume. For information about your specific configuration, see the appropriate chapter in this document for your operating system environment.

Out-of-band (direct) management method

When you use the out-of-band (direct) management method, you manage storage subsystems directly over the network through the Ethernet connection to each controller.

To manage the storage subsystem through the Ethernet connections, you must define the IP address and host name for each controller and attach a cable to the Ethernet ports on each of the storage subsystem controllers. Figure 3 on page 14 shows the out-of-band management method.

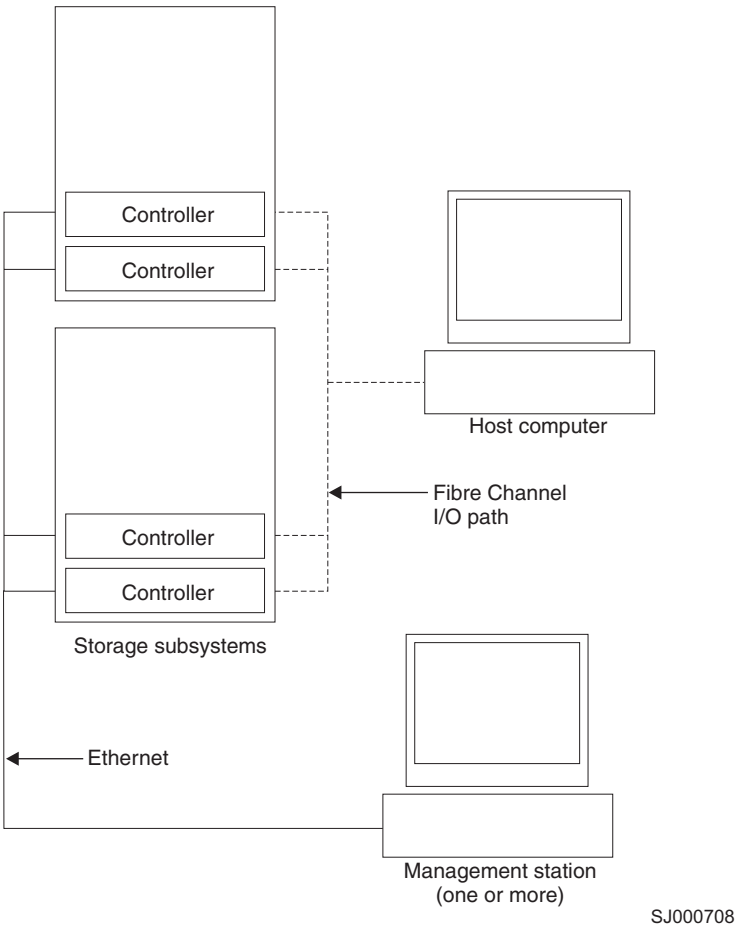


Figure 3. Out-of-band managed storage subsystems

If you use the out-of-band management method, see “Setting up IP addresses for DS4000 storage controllers” on page 20.

Out-of-band management method advantages

Using the out-of-band management method provides the following advantages:

- Unlike in-band management, which uses the Fibre Channel connections for both I/O and status reporting, out-of-band management dedicates the Fibre Channel for I/O only. Therefore, out-of-band management can result in higher performance than host-agent management.
- Because status reporting is conducted over Ethernet connections, the SMclient software can be accessed for problem determination if both Fibre Channel connections to the controllers are lost.
- The Ethernet connections to the controllers enable a storage management station running the SMclient software to manage storage subsystems that are connected to a host.`

Out-of-band management method disadvantages

Using the out-of-band management method has the following disadvantages:

- It requires two Ethernet cables to connect both storage subsystem controllers to the network.
- When you configure IP addresses for new devices, you must either assign a static IP address or host name for each controller, or place the devices on a network with a DHCP or BOOTP server.

- Other network preparation tasks might be required. For more information, see the system installation guide for your network server.

Reviewing a sample network

Figure 4 on page 16 shows an example of a network that contains both an out-of-band storage subsystem (Network A) and an in-band managed storage subsystem (Network B).

Out-of-band-managed storage subsystem: Network A is an out-of-band-managed storage subsystem. Network A contains the following components:

- A DHCP or BOOTP server
- A network management station (NMS) for Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps
- A host that is connected to a storage subsystem through a fibre-channel I/O path
- A management station that is connected by an Ethernet cable to the storage subsystem controllers

Note: If the controllers, static IP addresses, or default IP addresses are used, you do not need to setup the DHCP/BOOTP server.

In-band storage subsystem: Network B is an in-band-managed storage subsystem. Network B contains the following components:

- A host that is connected to a storage subsystem through a fibre-channel I/O path
- A management station that is connected by an Ethernet cable to the host computer

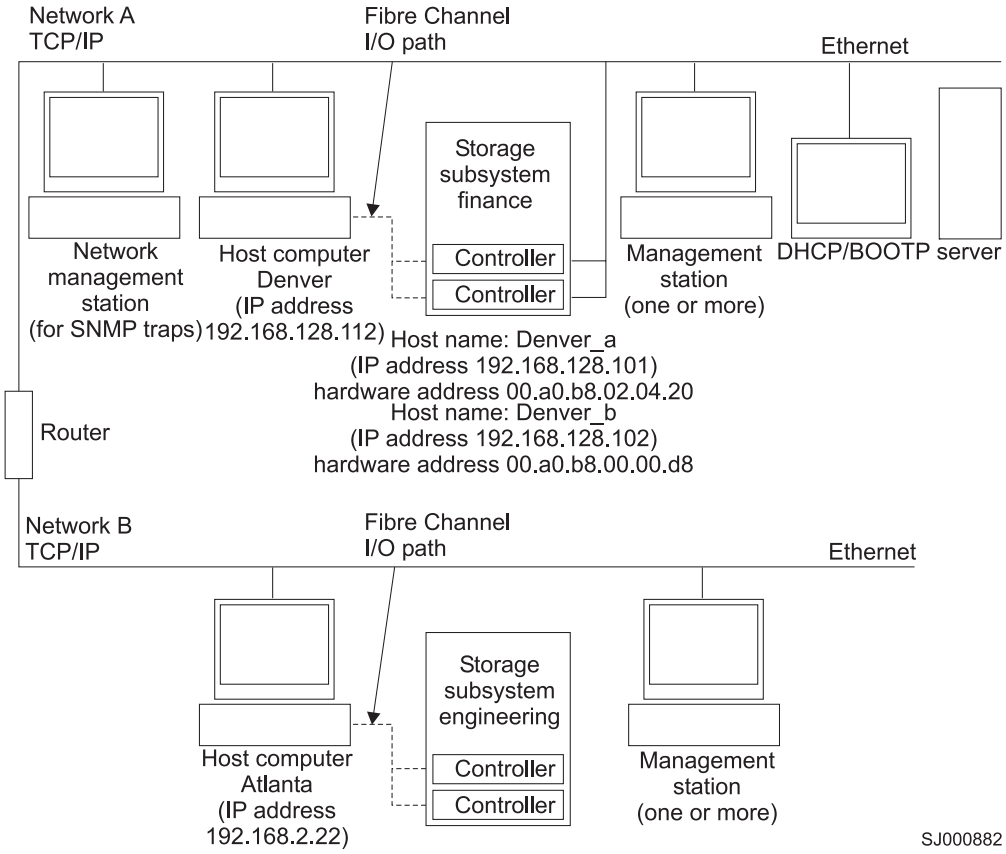


Figure 4. Sample network using both out-of-band and in-band managed storage subsystems

Installation process diagram

Figure 5 on page 17, Figure 6 on page 18, and Figure 7 on page 19 provide an overview of the installation process for out-of-band management.

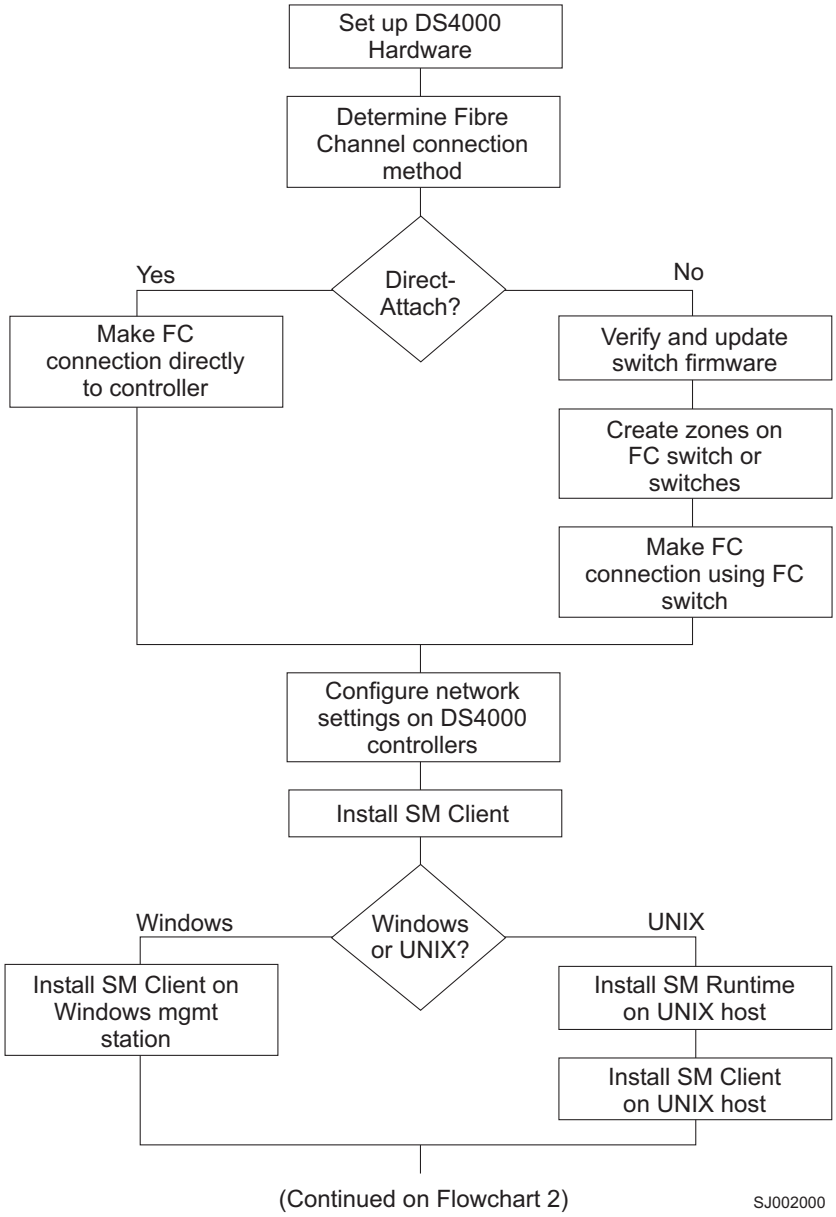


Figure 5. Installation process (part 1)

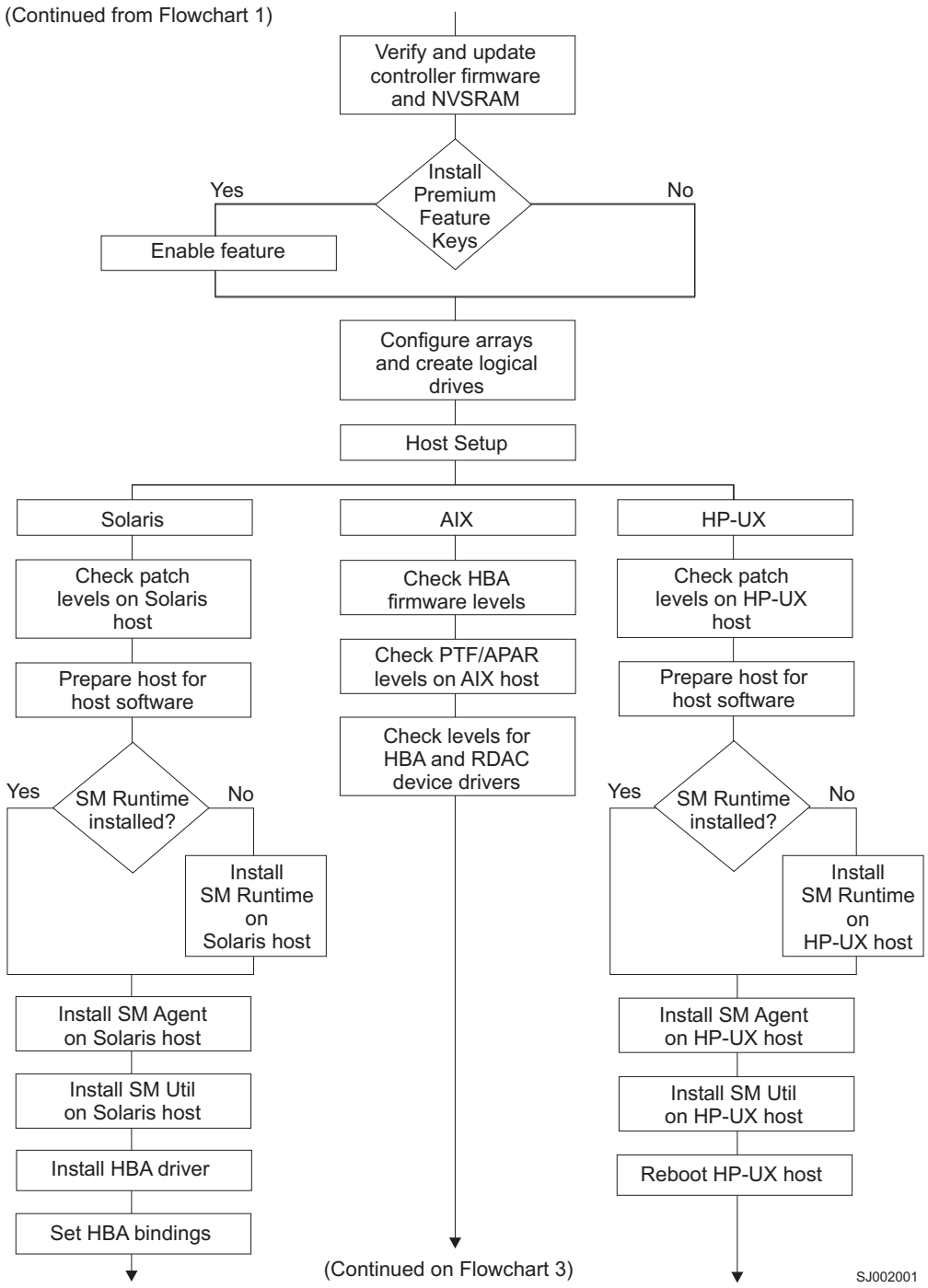


Figure 6. Installation process (part 2)

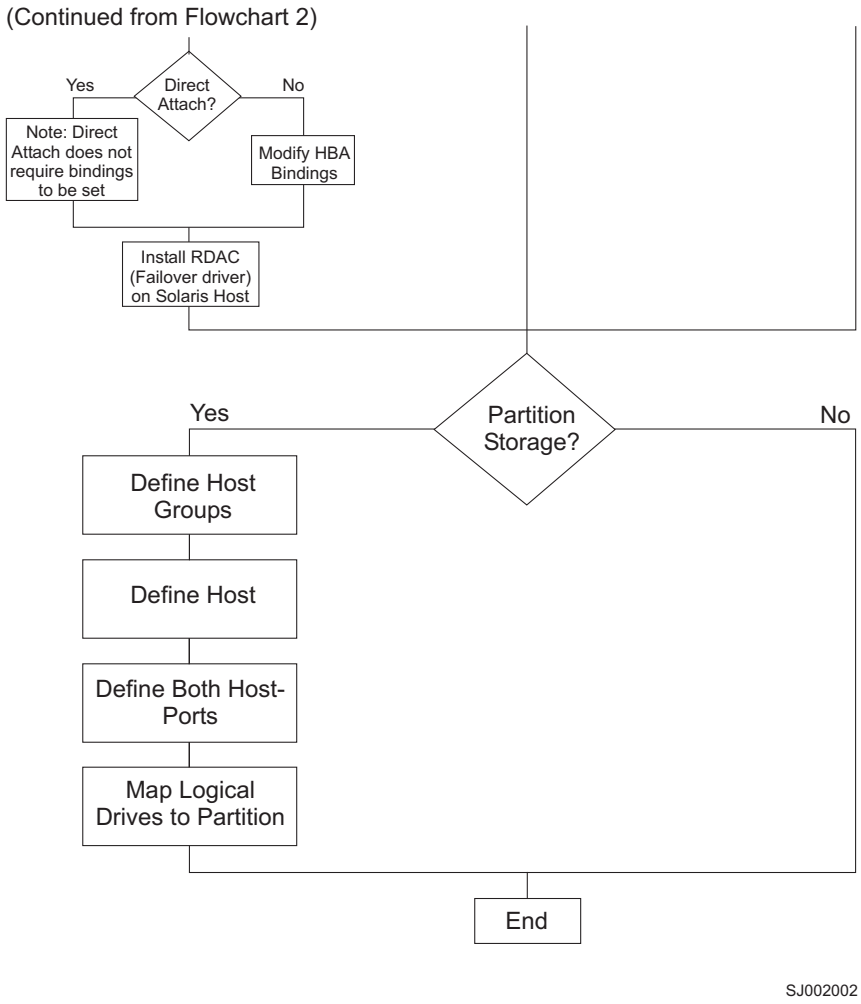


Figure 7. Installation process (part 3)

Setting up IP addresses for DS4000 storage controllers

Complete the following procedures after you install SMruntime and SMclient, as described in the installation section for your host operating system:

1. “Setting up the DHCP/BOOTP server and network”
2. “Setting up the DHCP/BOOTP server and network”

To complete these procedures, you must set up a DHCP or BOOTP server and network with the following components:

- A DHCP or BOOTP server
- A network management station (NMS) for Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps
- A host that is connected to a storage subsystem through a fibre-channel I/O path
- A management station that is connected by an Ethernet cable to the storage subsystem controllers

Note: You can avoid DHCP/BOOTP server and network tasks by assigning static IP addresses to the controller. If you do not wish to assign static TCP/IP addresses with the DS4000 Storage Manager, using the DS4000 default TCP/IP addresses, see the IBM support Web site at:

www.ibm.com/pc/support/

Refer to Retain Tip # H171389 Unable To Setup Networking Without DHCP/BOOTP.

Setting up the DHCP/BOOTP server and network

Complete the following steps to set up the DHCP/BOOTP server and network:

1. Get the MAC address from each controller blade.
2. Complete whichever of the following steps is appropriate for your server:
   - On a DHCP server, create a DHCP record for each of the MAC addresses. Set the lease duration to the longest time possible.
   - On a BOOTP server, edit the bootptab file to add in the entries that associate the MAC address tab with the TCP/IP address.
3. Connect the DS4000 storage subsystem Ethernet ports to the network.
4. Boot the DS4000 storage subsystem.

When you are finished, complete the steps in the next section, “Steps for assigning static TCP/IP addresses to the DS4000 controllers.”

Steps for assigning static TCP/IP addresses to the DS4000 controllers

Complete the following steps to assign static TCP/IP addresses to the DS4000 storage subsystem controllers, using default TCP/IP addresses that are assigned to the DS4000 storage subsystem controllers during manufacturing:

1. Make a direct management connection to the DS4000 storage subsystem, using the default TCP/IP addresses:
   - **Controller A:** 192.168.128.101
   - **Controller B:** 192.168.128.102
2. Start SMclient. The Enterprise Management window opens.
3. In the Enterprise Management window, click on the name of the default storage subsystem. The Subsystem Management window opens.

4. In the Subsystem Management window, right-click the controller icon and select **Change —> Network Configuration** in the pull-down menu. The Change Network Configuration window opens.
5. In the Change Network Configuration window, click on the Controller A and Controller B tabs and type the new TCP/IP addresses in their appropriate fields. Click **OK**.
6. Close the Subsystem Management window, wait five minutes, then delete the default DS4000 storage subsystem entry in the Enterprise Management window.
7. Add a new storage subsystem entry in the Enterprise Management window, using the new TCP/IP address.

Note: To manage storage subsystems through a firewall, configure the firewall to open port 2463 to TCP data.

DS4100 and DS4300 storage server usage notes

Note the following restrictions:

- DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not support DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosures.
- DS4100 and DS4300 standard (base) storage servers do not support the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature.
- DS4100 and DS4300 single-controller (SCU) storage servers are do not support Storage Manager controller firmware 6.1x.xx.xx.

DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning

DS4000 storage systems provide a high degree of flexibility to meet today's demanding storage applications. As such, care should be taken to plan configurations that meet specific application performance requirements.

Like most storage vendors, IBM publishes data sheets and specifications for the capabilities of the storage subsystem. These are intended for use as reference points for raw capabilities, but do not necessarily imply that actual performance specifications will be achieved for all configurations and operating environments. Many factors that are external to the DS4000 storage server, such as server processor and memory, host bus adapters, command queue depth settings, and I/O size, can impact performance.

You must plan the configuration and setup of the DS4000 for your operating environment. If proper planning is not performed, poor performance can result, such as low throughput or high disk latencies (response times).

If your system uses controller firmware versions 5.4.xx.xx or later, you can create storage partitions with greater than 32 logical drives (up to 256). Take this factor into account during configuration planning. Depending on the I/O load requirements, it might be beneficial to spread volumes out on multiple partitions, if your operating system allows it.

Note: Not all operating system environments can support 256 logical drives per partition. See Table 5:

Table 5. Maximum number of logical drives per partition

Operating system	Maximum number of LUNs per partition
AIX	256

Table 5. Maximum number of logical drives per partition (continued)

Operating system	Maximum number of LUNs per partition
HP-UX 11.0	32
HP-UX 11.i	128
Solaris	256 with DMP 32 with RDAC
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9	256
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3	256

The following example shows three possible configurations that have more than 32 logical drives.

Performance planning: Configuration examples

If your system is running DS4000 Storage Manager firmware version 5.4.xx.xx or later, you can configure all 64 logical disks into one storage partition with two HBAs. You can also configure 256 logical disks into one partition with two HBAs. See Table 6:

Note: Systems running DS4000 Storage Manager firmware version 5.3.xx.xx or earlier require two storage partitions, each with 32 logical drives and four HBAs, to connect 64 logical disks to a host.

Table 6. Examples of possible configurations with more than 32 logical drives

Configuration number	Storage Manager firmware version	HBAs	Storage partitions	Logical drives
1	5.3.xx.xx	4	2	64
2	5.4.xx.xx	2	1	64
3	5.4.xx.xx or 6.1x.xx.xx	2	1	256

You might expect the following performance results with the configurations listed in Table 6:

- Configuration 1 might perform better than Configuration 2, which has more logical drives per storage partition.
- Depending on the application, Configuration 3 might perform poorly because of the large number of logical drives per partition. Applications that do not require frequent use of (or connectivity to) many logical drives might respond quite well and meet performance expectations. Other applications, such as those that require simultaneous access to all volumes over extended periods of time, will likely experience lower throughput and high latencies on the individual logical drives.

For excellent information about how to plan your configuration, see the following documents:

- *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide*
- *IBM TotalStorage: DS4000 Best Practices Guide*

DS4000 Storage Manager premium features

DS4000 Storage Manager supports the following premium features, which are available for purchase separately from IBM or an IBM Business Partner:

Premium copy services features

The following copy services are available with Storage Manager 9.1:

- FlashCopy®
- VolumeCopy
- Enhanced Remote Mirror Option

Storage Partitioning premium feature

Storage Partitioning is standard on all DS4000 storage servers that are supported by DS4000 Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.10.xx.xx.

"FC/SATA Intermix premium feature" on page 25

The IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix premium feature supports the concurrent attachment of Fibre Channel and SATA storage expansion enclosures to a single DS4000 controller configuration.

Premium copy services features

This document lists the premium copy services features that are supported by DS4000 Storage Manager, but does not describe them in detail. For detailed copy services concepts and procedures, see the following documents, which are included on the DS4000 Storage Manager installation CD-ROM.

- *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Copy Services User's Guide*
- *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide*

DS4000 Storage Manager supports the following premium copy services.

FlashCopy

FlashCopy supports the creation and management of FlashCopy logical drives, which are logical equivalents of complete physical copies. FlashCopy logical drives are created more quickly than physical copies, and they require less disk space.

FlashCopy is host addressable, so you can perform backups using FlashCopy while the base logical drive is online and user-accessible. When the backup completes, you can delete the FlashCopy logical drive or save it for reuse.

VolumeCopy

VolumeCopy is used with FlashCopy to copy data from one logical drive to a target logical drive in a single storage subsystem. For example, you can use VolumeCopy for any of the following purposes:

- To copy data from arrays that use smaller capacity drives to arrays that use larger capacity drives
- To back up data
- To restore FlashCopy logical drive data to the base logical drive

Notes:

1. You must have FlashCopy enabled in order to use VolumeCopy. VolumeCopy can be purchased as part of a package with FlashCopy, or it can be purchased at a later time as an enhancement to FlashCopy.
2. VolumeCopy is not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx, or with the DS4100 storage server.

Enhanced Remote Mirror Option

The Enhanced Remote Mirror Option provides online, real-time replication of data between storage subsystems over a remote distance.

In the event of a disaster or unrecoverable error at one storage subsystem, the Enhanced Remote Mirror Option enables you to promote a second storage subsystem to take over responsibility for normal I/O operations.

Notes:

1. With Storage Manager controller firmware versions earlier than 6.1x.xx.xx, you cannot use the Enhanced Remote Mirror Option. However, you can use a previous version of the Remote Mirror Option. See *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Copy Services User's Guide* for more information about the different versions.
2. **Exception:** You cannot use the Remote Mirror Option or the Enhanced Remote Mirror Option with Storage Manager controller firmware versions 5.41.xx.xx or 5.42.xx.xx, or with the DS4100 storage server.

Storage Partitioning premium feature

The Storage Partitioning feature enables you to associate a set of logical drives on a DS4000 storage server that can only be accessed by specified hosts and host ports. This association of logical drives to a set of hosts and host ports is called a *storage partition*. The benefit of defining storage partitions is to allow controlled access to the logical drives to only those hosts also defined in the storage partition.

Table 7 shows how many storage partitions are standard on your DS4000 storage server.

Table 7. Using Storage Partitioning with DS4000 storage servers

DS4000 Storage Server	Storage Partitioning enabled by default	Maximum number of storage partitions
DS4100 Standard (Base) and Single-Controller (SCU)	No	16
DS4500	Yes (16 partitions standard)	64
DS4400	Yes (64 partitions standard)	64
DS4300 with Turbo option	Yes (8 partitions standard)	64
DS4300 Standard (Base) and Single-Controller (SCU)	No	16

If you do not use Storage Partitioning, all logical drives are contained in a default host group. The logical drives in the default host group can be accessed by any Fibre Channel initiator that has access to the DS4000 host port.

When the DS4000 storage server is attached to a SAN, you can use zoning within the fabric to limit access to the DS4000 host ports to specific set of hosts. Also, when homogeneous host servers are directly attached to the DS4000 storage server, access to all logical drives might be satisfactory.

Note: For more information about fabric switches, see Appendix E, "Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment," on page 209.

Recommendation: On systems that have the Storage Partitioning feature enabled, use storage partitioning when configuring logical drives and hosts. Configure each server to use separate partitions, unless your system uses supported clustering software applications.

FC/SATA Intermix premium feature

The IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix premium feature supports the concurrent attachment of Fibre Channel and SATA storage expansion enclosures to a single DS4000 controller configuration.

With this premium feature, IBM TotalStorage DS4500, DS4400, and DS4300 Turbo storage servers can support the attachment of DS4000 EXP700 and EXP710 Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosures, and DS4000 EXP100 Serial ATA storage expansion enclosures, concurrently.

In this way, the Intermix premium feature enables you to create and manage distinct arrays that are built from either Fibre Channel disks or SATA disks, and allocate logical drives to the appropriate applications using a single DS4000 storage server.

Please see your IBM technical service representative for information regarding future DS4000 storage server support for the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature.

For important information about using the Intermix premium feature, including configuration and set-up requirements, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview* (GC26-7713).

Enabling the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature

Storage Manager 9.1 supports the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature with both controller firmware versions, 6.10.xx.xx and 6.12.xx.xx. However, depending on which level of controller firmware is installed on your storage subsystem, you need to follow different procedures to enable the premium feature.

Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.10.xx.xx

On storage subsystems using Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.10.xx.xx, the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature is enabled using an NVSRAM file.

Download the appropriate NVSRAM version, as described in the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview*, Second Edition (GC26-7713-01), to enable the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature.

Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.12.xx.xx

On storage subsystems using Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.12.xx.xx, the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature is enabled using a premium feature key.

Install the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix Premium Feature Key, as described in the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview*, Third Edition (GC26-7713-02), to enable the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature.

Upgrading Storage Manager controller firmware on systems with FC/SATA Intermix already enabled: If you are currently using Storage Manager controller firmware 6.10.xx.xx and want to upgrade to 6.12.xx.xx, and you already have the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature enabled on your subsystem, you need to complete the steps in this section.

Complete the following steps to upgrade the controller firmware to 6.12.xx.xx:

1. Use the instructions in the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature activation card to generate the premium feature key file.
2. Upgrade the controller firmware and NVSRAM to 06.12.xx.xx version.

   Note: After the firmware is upgraded, the recovery guru will display the error "premium feature out-of-compliance." The premium feature that is out-of-compliance is the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature. You will not be able to create any arrays or logical drives or modify the LUNs until after you complete step 3.
3. Enable the DS4000 FC/SATA Intermix premium feature using the premium feature key file. This restores the DS4000 subsystem to full functionality.

Enabling your premium features

Complete the following steps to enable a premium feature:

Note: Before you enable the FC/SATA Intermix premium feature, see "FC/SATA Intermix premium feature" on page 25, and the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview* (GC26-7713).

1. Gather the following information:
   - The feature activation code that accompanies the premium feature
   - Your controller unit machine type, model number and IBM serial number, which are printed on the label on the back of your DS4000 controller unit
   - Your 32-digit DS4000 Subsystem feature enable identifier, which you can view in the DS4000 Storage Manager Subsystem Management Window by clicking **Storage Subsystem —> Premium Features —> List**
2. Ensure that your controller unit and storage expansion enclosures are connected, powered on, and configured.
3. Generate the feature key file and enable your premium feature by completing the steps at the following Web site:

   www-912.ibm.com/PremiumFeatures/jsp/keyInput.jsp

Your system is now ready to use the premium feature.

If the premium feature becomes disabled, you can access the Web site and repeat this process. For any additional assistance, please contact your IBM technical support representative.

Chapter 2. Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems

This chapter provides the following information for AIX operating systems:

- "Hardware, software and host system requirements"
- "AIX restrictions" on page 31
- "Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 32
- "Configuring storage subsystems" on page 35
- "Creating direct and SAN-attached configurations" on page 41
- "Installing the RDAC failover driver" on page 43
- "Identifying devices on AIX hosts" on page 45
- "Verifying the installation and configuration" on page 47
- "Viewing and setting Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes" on page 55
- "Additional AIX configuration information" on page 62
- "Resolving disk array errors" on page 66
- "Redistributing logical drives in case of failure" on page 68

Hardware, software and host system requirements

This section lists the following requirements:

- Hardware and firmware requirements for the DS4000 configuration
- Hardware and software requirements for the AIX host system

Note: For the latest installation requirements and user information about Storage Manager, AIX file sets, and hardware components, see the readme file that is located in the AIX DS4000 Installation CD. The most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes this document, is maintained at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for AIX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for AIX.

DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements

Table 8 on page 28 lists the DS4000 Fibre Channel storage servers that you can use with DS4000 Storage Manager.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 8. DS4000 storage servers that are used with AIX systems

Product Name	Model	Minimum appware/snapware (firmware) and NVSRAM versions
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server	1724-100	Check the latest readme file for the most up-to-date information. For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site: www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/ Click the link for your storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for AIX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for AIX.
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-90U	
IBM TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-1RU	
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Standard and Turbo Fibre Channel Storage Servers	1722-60U, 1722-60X	

Restriction: DS4100 and DS4300 *single-controller* storage servers are not supported with AIX hosts. (DS4100 and DS4300 dual-controller storage servers are supported with AIX hosts.)

Table 9 on page 29 lists the DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosures and other hardware that are supported with DS4000 Storage Manager.

Note: For important information about using the DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosure, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* (GC26-7601).

Table 9. Supported versions of hardware for AIX systems

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Storage Expansion Enclosure	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 SATA Storage Expansion Enclosure	1710-10U or 10X	9554 **Note:** When upgrading the EXP100 to ESM firmware version 9554, you must use a storage subsystem that has Storage Manager controller firmware **05.41.1x.xx** installed . You cannot upgrade to ESM firmware 9554 using a storage subsystem with different firmware installed.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-710	9627
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-1RU or 1RX	9326 **Note:** You must upgrade the EXP700 ESM firmware to version 9326 before you upgrade the Storage Manager controller firmware to version **06.1x.xx.xx**.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	3560-1RU or 1RX	9166
Host Bus Adapters	IBM HA Emulex LP7000	FC 6227	3.30X1
	IBM HA Emulex LP9000	FC 6228	3.91A1
	IBM HA Emulex LP9802-F2	FC 6239	1.81X1
	IBM HA Emulex LP10000 (AIX 5.2H and 5.3 only)	FC 5716	1.90AX4

Table 9. Supported versions of hardware for AIX systems (continued)

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Switches	Brocade switch	2109-S08 2109-S16	2.6.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-F16	3.1.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-M12	4.0.2C
	Brocade switch	2109-F32	4.2.0C
	Brocade switch	2109-F08	3.1.2A
	McData switch	2032-064, 2032-140	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-016	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-216, 2031-224	6.01.00 - 18
	InRange switch	2042-001	4.3.0
	Cisco switch	2062-D01, 2062-D07, 2062-T07	1.3.4A

Note: Check the latest readme file for the most up-to-date firmware versions.

For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site:
www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/
Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for AIX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for AIX.

Note: If you have any questions about the latest DS4000 interoperability information, see the DS4000 interoperability matrix at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/interop-matrix.html

AIX system requirements

This section lists the minimum hardware and software requirements for an AIX host in a DS4300, DS4400, or DS4500 storage subsystem that is managed by DS4000 Storage Manager.

Hardware requirements

The following hardware is required at minimum:

Any RS/6000®, RS6000 SP or IBM @server pSeries™ or POWER server that supports FC 6227, FC 6228, FC 6239 or FC 5716 host bus adapters

Important: If you are using AIX 5.3 with a POWER4 system, contact your IBM service representative before installing AIX 5.3. Updated system firmware is required.

Software requirements

The following AIX software is required:

- AIX 5.1, 5.2, or 5.3

- File sets associated with IBM RDAC driver installations that are listed in Table 11 on page 43, Table 12 on page 44, or Table 13 on page 44.

AIX restrictions

The following restrictions apply to AIX configurations:

SAN and connectivity restrictions

- AIX hosts (or LPARs) can support multiple host bus adapters (HBAs) and DS4000 devices. However, there is a restriction on the number of HBAs that can be connected to a single DS4000 storage server. You can configure up to two HBAs per partition and up to two partitions per DS4000 storage server. Additional HBAs can be added for additional DS4000 storage servers and other SAN devices, up to the limits of your specific server platform.
- Direct-attach configurations are restricted to single-initiator configurations only. You can only make one connection to each minihub on a DS4000 storage server.

  Note: DS4300 and DS4100 storage servers do not have minihubs.
- Single HBA configurations are allowed, but each single HBA configuration requires that both controllers in the DS4000 be connected to the HBA, either through a switch or daisy-chain (direct-attach only). If they are connected through a switch, both controllers must be within the same SAN zone as the HBA.

  Attention: Having a single HBA configuration can lead to loss of access data in the event of a path failure.
- Single-switch configurations are allowed, but each HBA and DS4000 controller combination must be in a separate SAN zone.
- Other storage devices, such as tape devices or other disk storage, must be connected through separate HBAs and SAN zones.

Restrictions when booting up your system

- If you want to use a CD to install AIX on a DS4000 device on a partition with more than 32 LUNs, you must use a CD that installs AIX version 5.2H or later. You cannot use an AIX CD that installs an earlier version of AIX.

  Therefore, if your AIX installation CD version is earlier than AIX 5.2H, and your system is booted from a DS4000 device, do not create more than 32 LUNs on the partition you boot from.
- When you boot your system from a DS4000 device, both paths to the DS4000 storage server must be up and running.
- The system cannot use path failover during the AIX boot process. Once the AIX host has started, failover operates normally.

Recommendation: It is recommended that you do not boot your system from a SATA device.

Partitioning restrictions

- The maximum number of partitions per AIX host, per DS4000 storage server, is two.
- All logical drives that are configured for AIX must be mapped to an AIX host group. For more information, see “Storage Partitioning: Defining an AIX host group” on page 39 and “Storage Partitioning premium feature” on page 24.

- On each controller, you must configure at least one LUN with an ID between 0 and 31 that is not a UTM or access logical drive.

Interoperability restrictions

- You cannot use F-RAID Manager.
- You cannot use dynamic volume expansion (DVE) on AIX 5.1.
- DS4100 and DS4300 *single-controller* storage servers are not supported with AIX hosts. (DS4100 and DS4300 dual-controller storage servers are supported with AIX hosts.)

Installing DS4000 Storage Manager

There are two methods of installing DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 (version 09.12.xx.xx):

- "Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard"
- "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 33 (original method)

Notes:

1. DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 (software package version 09.10.xx.xx) does not include an installation wizard. The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 software packages must be installed using the procedures described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 33.
2. Do not install the software packages in the same server by using both the installation wizard and the manual installation method.

Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard

The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 installation wizard installs the following software packages on the AIX host:

- SMruntime
- SMclient
- SMagent
- SMutil

Requirements: The DS4000 Storage Manager installation wizard requires a system with a graphics adapter card installed.

If your system does not have a graphics card installed — or if for any reason you do not want to use the wizard to install the software — skip this section, and install the stand-alone host software packages using the original installation procedure described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 33. The packages are included with the installation CD.

Complete the following steps to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software using the installation wizard.

1. Download the following file from the DS4000 Storage Manager CD, or from the DS4000 support Web site, to a directory on your system:

   SMIA-AIX-09.12.xx.xx.bin
2. Open the file on your system. The Storage Manager Installation wizard's Introduction window opens.
3. Follow the instructions in each window of the wizard. When you select the installation type, you can choose one of the following options:

- Typical (Full Installation) — Installs all Storage Manager software packages
- Management Station — Installs SMruntime and SMclient
- Host — Installs SMruntime, SMagent and SMutil
- Custom — Allows you to select which packages you want to install

4. Restart the system.

Result: The DS4000 Storage Manager software is installed on your system.

Installing Storage Manager packages manually

Use the following procedures, in the order listed, to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software on an AIX storage management station.

1. "Installing the client software"
2. "Installing SMagent (optional)" on page 34

Installing the client software

Install the client software in the following order:

1. DS4000 SMruntime software
2. DS4000 SMclient software

Note: SMclient is dependent on SMruntime, which is a Java compiler for SMclient and must be installed first.

Prerequisites: Before installing the software, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The AIX host on which you are installing SMruntime meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in "Hardware, software and host system requirements" on page 27 and "Software requirements" on page 30.
- The correct file sets are present on the system.

  Note: If the file sets are not present, follow the instructions in "Installing the RDAC failover driver" on page 43 to download them from the appropriate Web site. For lists of required file sets, see the following tables in "AIX system requirements" on page 30:
  - **AIX 5.1:** Table 11 on page 43
  - **AIX 5.2:** Table 12 on page 44
  - **AIX 5.3:** Table 13 on page 44
- The DS4000 Storage Manager files are available in a directory on the system.

Steps for installing SMruntime software: Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the installation process.

1. Install SMruntime by typing the following command:

```
# installp -a  -d /path_name
/SMruntime.AIX-09.1x.xx.xx.bff SMruntime.aix.rte
```

   where *path_name* is the directory path to the SMruntime package.

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
 # lslpp -ah SMruntime.aix.rte
```

The verification process returns a table that describes the software installation, including the install package file name, version number, action and action status. If the verification process returns an error, contact your IBM service representative.

Steps for installing SMclient software: Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the client installation process.

1. Install SMclient by typing the following command:

```
# installp -a  -d /path_name/
SMclient.AIX-09.1x.xx.xx.bff SMclient.aix.rte
```

   where *path_name* is the directory path to the SMclient package.

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# lslpp -ah SMclient.aix.rte
```

The verification process returns a table that describes the software installation, including the install package file name, version number, action and action status. If the verification process returns an error, contact your support representative.

Installing SMagent (optional)

SMagent is required for in-band management only. It is not required for out-of-band management.

Prerequisites: Before installing SMagent, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- This is the AIX server that you identified as the storage management station.
- This machine meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in “AIX system requirements” on page 30.
- SMruntime has been installed.

Note: SMagent is not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

Steps for installing SMagent software: Modify these commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the client installation process.

Note: The installation process adds an entry to the /etc/inittab file that starts SMagent each time the system is booted.

1. Install SMagent by typing the following command:

```
# installp -a  -d /path_name/
SMagent.AIX-9.1x.xx.xx.bff SMagent.aix.rte
```

   where *path_name* is the directory path to the SMagent package.

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# lslpp -ah SMagent.aix.rte
```

Starting or stopping SMagent software: Use the following command to manually start SMagent:

```
# SMagent start
```

Use the following command to manually stop SMagent:

```
# SMagent stop
```

Configuring storage subsystems

If you have purchased a Storage Partitioning premium feature, ensure that the premium feature is enabled. For more information, see “Enabling your premium features” on page 26.

Complete the following procedures to configure DS4000 Storage Manager for an AIX system. This can be done from the DS4000 SMclient software running on either an AIX or a non-AIX system.

Adding storage subsystems to SMClient

Complete the following steps to add storage subsystems to DS4000 SMclient:

1. To set up the storage subsystem for AIX and DS4000 SMclient, the subsystem must be physically configured for direct management through the Ethernet connections on each controller. Install SMclient before configuring the subsystem.

   Note: See “Setting up IP addresses for DS4000 storage controllers” on page 20 for information about assigning IP addresses to the controllers.
2. After the disk subsystem is configured on the network, start SMclient on the host server by typing the following command:

   ```
   # /usr/SMclient/SMclient
   ```

   The Enterprise Management window opens.
3. Complete the following steps to specify the IP addresses of the controllers:
   a. In the Enterprise Management window, click **Edit —> Add Storage Subsystem**.
   b. In the Add Storage Subsystem window, type the IP address of the first controller in the storage subsystem and click **Add**. Then type the IP address of the second controller and click **Add**
   c. Click **Close**.

   The name of the storage subsystem displays in the Enterprise Management window.
4. Double-click the name of the storage subsystem to open its Subsystem Management window.

Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM

The procedures in this section describe how to download and install DS4000 controller firmware and NVSRAM.

Overview

Read the information in the following sections before you begin the download procedures:

- “Using concurrent download” on page 36
- “Using traditional or staged download” on page 36

Using concurrent download: Depending on your system's current firmware and AIX device driver levels, you might be able to use *concurrent download*. Concurrent download is a method of downloading firmware to the controllers that does not require you to stop I/O to the controllers during the process.

Attention:

1. You cannot use concurrent firmware download if you change the default setting of the Object Data Manager (ODM) attribute *switch_retries*. The default is **5**. See "Viewing and setting Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes" on page 55 for more information.
2. If you do not have the correct firmware versions to use concurrent download, you must ensure that all I/O to the controllers is stopped before you upgrade the firmware or NVSRAM.

   To find out whether you can use concurrent download, see Table 10.

Table 10. Minimum firmware and device driver versions for concurrent download (AIX)

Storage Manager controller firmware version:	Minimum AIX device driver file sets:
DS4300: 05.40.07.xx **DS4400/DS4500:** 05.40.06.xx	devices.fcp.disk.array: 5.1.0.58 devices.fcp.disk.array: 5.2.0.17
All other DS4000 storage servers: 05.30.xx.xx, 05.40.xx.xx, 06.10.xx.xx	devices.fcp.disk.array: 5.3.0.0
Attention: You cannot upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx using concurrent download. For example: • You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware. • You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 5.4x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 5.4x.xx.xx firmware.	

Using traditional or staged download: There are two methods for downloading the firmware to the controllers:

- "Traditional download"
- "Staged download"

Traditional download: The traditional download process takes significantly longer and must be done in one phase, rather than in two phases as with the staged controller firmware download. Therefore the preferred method of controller firmware download is the staged controller firmware download.

Staged download: With staged firmware download, the download process occurs in two distinct phases: firmware transfer and firmware activation. You can perform the time-consuming task of loading the firmware online so that it is functionally transparent to the application. You can then defer the activation of the loaded firmware to a convenient time.

Some reasons for activating firmware files at a later time include the following:

- **Time of day** - Activating can take a long time, so you might want to wait until I/O loads are lighter because the controllers will go offline briefly to activate the new firmware.
- **Type of package** - You might want to test the new firmware package on one storage subsystem before activating it on other storage subsystems.

- **Multiple controllers** - You can download controller firmware from the storage management software to all storage subsystem controllers for later activation.

Notes:

1. You cannot use staged download to upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to version 6.1x.xx.xx. You can only use staged download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
2. Staged controller firmware download is not supported on DS4400 storage servers.

Important: Do not perform other storage management tasks, such as creating or deleting logical drives, reconstructing arrays, and so on, while downloading the DS4000 storage server controller firmware. It is recommended that you close all storage management sessions (except for the session that you use to upgrade the firmware) to the DS4000 storage server that you plan to update.

Preparing for firmware or NVSRAM download

To prepare for download, review and complete all of the steps in this section before you start the download procedures.

Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM: Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are provided with this product might be later releases than those described in this document.

To check the firmware and NVSRAM versions that are currently installed on your system, complete the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window displays.
2. In the Storage Subsystem Profile window, click the Controllers tab to view the current versions of firmware and NVSRAM.
3. Click **Close** to close the Storage Subsystem Profile window.
4. To find whether the versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are currently on your storage subsystem are the latest versions, see the readme file at the following Web site:

   www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

   Click the link for your storage server.

   When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for AIX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for AIX.

   The latest versions are listed in the readme file.
5. If you find that you do not have the latest versions of the firmware and NVSRAM, click the **Back** button on your browser to return to the previous page. From there, you can download the correct versions to the host by clicking the appropriate link that is listed in the IBM DS4000 Controller Firmware matrix.

Save the storage subsystem configuration: Saving the storage subsystem configuration to a script file is necessary in order to restore the configuration in the event of a catastrophic failure.

Attention: Do not use this option if the storage subsystem is undergoing an operation that changes any configuration settings. (If any logical drive listed in the Logical View of the Subsystem Management window has a clock icon, then a configuration change is occurring, and you must wait to save the configuration.)

You can also save the storage subsystem profile, by selecting **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** in the Subsystem Management window.

Save the storage subsystem configuration by completing the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> Configuration —> Save**. The Save Configuration window displays.
2. In the Save Configuration window, select the elements of the configuration that you want to save, and click **Yes**. A save dialog displays.
3. In the save dialog, specify a name for the script file and select its location.

   Notes:

   - The .cfg extension is used by default for the script file if you do not specify a file extension.
   - Do not store your DS4000 Storage Server configuration script file in the same location as the logical drives that are defined on your DS4000 Storage Server. If you do, and the logical drives fail during the subsequent migration, you will lose data.
4. Click **Save**. The Configuration Saved window displays.
5. Review the information in the Configuration Saved window, then click **OK** to return to the Subsystem Management window.

Determine whether you need to stop I/O: Check your system's current firmware and device driver levels to determine whether you need to stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware, using the information that is listed in Table 10 on page 36.

Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.

Steps for upgrading the controller firmware

Complete the following steps to install a new firmware version on the controllers:

1. Download the correct version of the firmware from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 37. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
3. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller Firmware**. The Download Firmware window displays.
4. Click **Browse** to select the firmware file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
5. If you want to perform a staged firmware download, select the check box next to ″Transfer files but don't activate them (activate later).″ If you want to perform a traditional firmware download, do not select the check box, and the firmware will load immediately.
6. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
7. Click **Yes** to start the download.

8. Close the Subsystem Management window and then reopen it to complete the firmware update.
9. Verify that the firmware was successfully installed.

Steps for upgrading the NVSRAM

Complete the following steps to install a new version of NVSRAM on the controllers. NVSRAM will be activated immediately.

1. Download the correct NVSRAM version from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 37. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware and device driver levels to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the NVSRAM, using the information that is listed in Table 10 on page 36.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the NVSRAM.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller NVSRAM**. The Download NVSRAM window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the NVSRAM file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
7. Click **Yes** to start the download.
8. Verify that the NVSRAM was successfully installed.

Storage Partitioning: Defining an AIX host group

A *host group* is an entity in the Storage Partitioning topology that defines a logical collection of host computers that require shared access to one or more logical drives. You can grant individual hosts in a defined host group access to storage partitions, independently of the host group. You can make logical drive-to-LUN mappings to the host group or to an individual host in a host group.

For more information about storage partitioning, see "Storage Partitioning premium feature" on page 24.

This section contains the following procedures:

1. "Steps for defining an AIX host group"
2. "Steps for verifying that the host ports match the host" on page 40

Before you begin: Read the following information.

- Create the AIX host group at the storage subsystem level. Do not create host groups at the default group level.

  Exception: If you are running a DS4300 configuration without partitioning enabled, you can use the default host group.
- In a cluster partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host group level so that all the hosts can see the same storage. In a normal partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host level.

Steps for defining an AIX host group

1. Click the **Mappings View** tab on the Subsystem Management window.

2. In the Topology section of the Mappings window, highlight the name of the storage subsystem, and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host Group**.

   Note: Make sure that the storage subsystem is highlighted in the left panel of the Subsystem Management window. Do not highlight Undefined Mappings.
3. Type the name of the new host group (for example, AIX). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
4. In the Topology section of the Mappings window, highlight the new host group and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host**.
5. Define the new host. Type the name of the AIX host to which the storage subsystem is attached.
   a. Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
   b. Highlight the host that you just added, then right-click and select **Define Host Port**.
   c. Type or select the desired host port for the first HBA, and then change the host type to **AIX**. Click **Add**.

      Note: Failure to change the host type from the default to AIX will cause undesired results.
   d. If you are configuring additional HBAs to this partition, choose the host port for the next HBA and click **Add**, and then click **Close**.

Steps for verifying that the host ports match the host

After you set up an AIX host group, complete the following steps to verify that the host ports match the AIX host:

1. Type the following command:

```
lsdev -Cc adapter | grep fcs
```

   A list that contains all the HBAs that are in the system is displayed, as shown in the following example:

```
# lsdev -Cc adapter |grep fcs
fcs0    Available 20-58    FC Adapter
fcs1    Available 30-70    FC Adapter
fcs2    Available 40-60    FC Adapter
fcs3    Available 90-58    FC Adapter
fcs4    Available B0-70    FC Adapter
fcs5    Available C0-60    FC Adapter
```

2. Identify the fcs number of the HBA that is connected to the DS4000.
3. Type the following command:

```
lscfg -vl fcs# |grep Network
```

   where *fcs#* is the fcs number of the HBA that is connected to the DS4000.

   The network address number of the HBA is displayed, as in the following example:

```
 # lscfg -vl fcs0|grep Network
       Network Address.............10000000C925514C
```

Note: A network address is also known as a worldwide port name (WWPN).

4. Verify that the network address number matches the host port number that displays in host partition table of the DS4000 SMclient.
5. Repeat this procedure to verify the second host port.

Mapping LUNS to a storage partition

This section contains the following procedures:

- "Mapping LUNs to a new partition"
- "Adding LUNs to an existing partition"

Mapping LUNs to a new partition

When mapping LUNs for the first time to a newly created partition, complete the following steps to map LUNs to the partition.

Before you begin: Read "DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning" on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Storage Partitioning**. The Define Storage Partitioning window opens.
3. In the Define Storage Partitioning window, select **Host**, then click **Next**.
4. Select the logical drive by name, on the right side of the window.
5. Accept the default LUN ID, or change it, then click **Add**.
6. Repeat step 5 for each LUN that you want to map to the partition.

Adding LUNs to an existing partition

When adding LUNs to an existing partition, complete the following steps to map the new LUNs to the partition.

Before you begin: Read "DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning" on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Additional Mappings**. The Define Additional Mapping window opens.
3. In the Define Additional Mapping window, select the following options, and then click **Add**:
   - Host group or host
   - Logical unit number (LUN)(0-255)
   - Logical drive

Repeat these steps for each LUN that you want to add to the partition.

Creating direct and SAN-attached configurations

DS4000 Storage Manager supports IBM DS4000 Fibre Channel Storage Servers in direct-attached AIX configurations or in a SAN environment through switches in AIX configurations.

Creating a direct-attached configuration

Before you begin: Ensure that:

- One or two AIX servers can be connected to the DS4000 storage servers.
- No external hubs are being used.
- Two-server DS4400 or DS4500 configurations require four host-side minihubs, each with exactly one Fibre Channel connection from each HBA to a minihub.

  Note: DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not have minihubs.
- Single HBA configurations are allowed. If you have a single HBA in a direct-attached configuration, both controllers in the DS4000 must be connected to the HBA through a daisy-chain.

  Attention: Having a single HBA configuration can lead to loss of access data in the event of a path failure.

Complete the following steps to set up a direct-attached configuration:

1. Connect the HBAs to each controller or minihub port of the DS4000 storage server.
2. Configure and verify the configuration, using the procedures that are described in “Identifying devices on AIX hosts” on page 45 and “Verifying the installation and configuration” on page 47.

Creating a SAN-attached configuration

Before you begin: Ensure that:

- Multiple Fibre Channel HBAs within the same server cannot “see” the same DS4000 controller port.
- The IBM Fibre Channel HBAs are isolated from each other if they are connected to the same switch that is connected to the same DS4000 controller port.
- Each Fibre Channel HBA and controller port must be in its own fabric zone, if they are connecting through a single Fibre Channel switch, such as 2109-F16.

  Multiple DS4000 devices can be configured to the same set of Fibre Channel HBAs through a Fibre Channel switch.

  Note: Single HBA configurations are allowed. If you have a single HBA in a SAN-attached configuration, both controllers in the DS4000 must be Fibre Channel connected to the HBA through a switch, and both controllers must be within the same SAN zone as the HBA. For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

  Attention: Having a single HBA configuration can lead to loss of access data in the event of a path failure.

Complete the following steps to set up a SAN-attached configuration:

1. Connect the HBAs to the switch or switches.
2. Connect the DS4000 storage subsystems to the switch or switches.
3. Set the required zones on the Fibre Channel switch or switches, if applicable.

   Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.
4. Configure and verify the configuration.
5. Use the **cfgmgr** command to enable the devices to log in to the switch.

Installing the RDAC failover driver

After you install the client software and configure your storage subsystems, use these instructions to install the appropriate DS4000 Storage Manager RDAC device driver.

You must install RDAC on all AIX hosts in your storage subsystem. This section describes how to check the current RDAC driver program driver version level, update the RDAC device driver, and verify that the RDAC update is complete.

Prerequisites

This section lists the prerequisites for installing the RDAC driver version levels on an AIX system and describes how to verify the current RDAC drive driver version level.

Installing the RDAC driver

The RDAC installation procedure that is described in “Steps for installing the RDAC driver” on page 44 refers to the tables listed in “AIX RDAC driver file sets.”

AIX RDAC driver file sets

The file sets that are listed in Table 11, Table 12 on page 44, and Table 13 on page 44 must be the specified versions or later. Be sure to check the readme file for more recently-updated information.

A readme file that contains the latest installation and user information about the AIX file sets, storage management software, and hardware components is located on the AIX DS4000 Installation CD. You can find the most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes this document, at the following Web site:
www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for AIX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for AIX.

Notes:

1. If you have 2102-F10 storage array devices connected to your system, do not install devices.fcp.disk.array.rte versions 5.1.0.58 or 5.2.0.17 or later. These versions do not support 2102-F10 devices. Contact your IBM technical support representative for assistance.
2. The AIX RDAC driver files are not included on the DS4000 installation CD. Either install them from the AIX Operating Systems CD, if the correct version is included, or download them from the following Web site:

   http://www-912.ibm.com/eserver/support/fixes/fcgui.jsp

   For more information, see “Installing the RDAC failover driver.”

Table 11. File sets required for AIX 5.1 RDAC

PTF file sets	Version
devices.fcp.disk.array.diag	5.1.0.51
devices.fcp.disk.array.rte	5.1.0.63

Table 11. File sets required for AIX 5.1 RDAC (continued)

PTF file sets	Version
devices.common.IBM.fc.rte	5.1.0.50
devices.pci.df1000f7.com	5.1.0.63
devices.pci.df1000f7.rte	5.1.0.36
devices.pci.df1000f9.rte	5.1.0.36

Table 12. File sets required for AIX 5.2 RDAC

PTF file sets	Version
devices.fcp.disk.array.diag	5.2.0.11
devices.fcp.disk.array.rte	5.2.0.51
devices.common.IBM.fc.rte	5.2.0.10
devices.pci.df1000f7.com	5.2.0.52
devices.pci.df1000f7.rte	5.2.0.30
devices.pci.df1000f9.rte	5.2.0.30
devices.pci.df1000fa.rte	5.2.0.50

Table 13. File sets required for AIX 5.3 RDAC

PTF file sets	Version
devices.fcp.disk.array.diag	5.3.0.0
devices.fcp.disk.array.rte	5.3.0.10
devices.common.IBM.fc.rte	5.3.0.0
devices.pci.df1000f7.com	5.3.0.10
devices.pci.df1000f7.rte	5.3.0.0
devices.pci.df1000f9.rte	5.3.0.0
devices.pci.df1000fa.rte	5.3.0.10

Important: With AIX 5.3, download the complete maintenance package and update all PTFs together. Do not install each PTF separately.

Steps for installing the RDAC driver

Complete the following steps to update the RDAC driver version (devices.fcp.disk.array.rte) on an AIX system. Repeat these steps for all AIX systems that are connected to the storage subsystem.

Before you begin: Check the file set versions that are listed in “AIX system requirements” on page 30 or in the readme file, to verify whether your AIX systems have the most recent RDAC file sets. You only need to perform this installation on AIX systems that do not have the most recent RDAC file sets.

1. Download the most recent file sets from the following Web site:

   techsupport.services.ibm.com/server/aix.fdc

2. Verify that the correct version of the software was successfully installed by typing the following command:

```
# lslpp -ah devices.fcp.disk.array.rte
```

   The verification process returns a table that describes the software installation,

including the installation package file set name, version number, action, and action status. If the verification process returns an error, contact your IBM technical support representative. If it does not return an error, then you are finished installing the updated RDAC driver on this AIX system.

3. For each AIX host that is to be attached to a DS4000 storage subsystem, repeat the above steps in order to install and verify the RDAC driver.

After you have finished installing RDAC, you can perform the initial device discovery, which is described in the next section.

Identifying devices on AIX hosts

The RDAC driver creates the following devices that represent the DS4000 storage subsystem configuration, as shown in Figure 8:

dar The disk array router (dar) device represents the entire array, including the current and the deferred paths to all LUNs (hdisks).

dac The disk array controller (dac) devices represent a controller within the storage subsystem. There are two dacs in the storage subsystem.

hdisk Each hdisk device represents an individual LUN on the array.

utm The universal transport mechanism (utm) device is used only with in-band management configurations, as a communication channel between the SMagent and the DS4000.

Note: You might see the utm device listed in command output, whether or not you have an in-band management configuration. For example, a utm might be listed when you run the **lsattr** command on a dac.

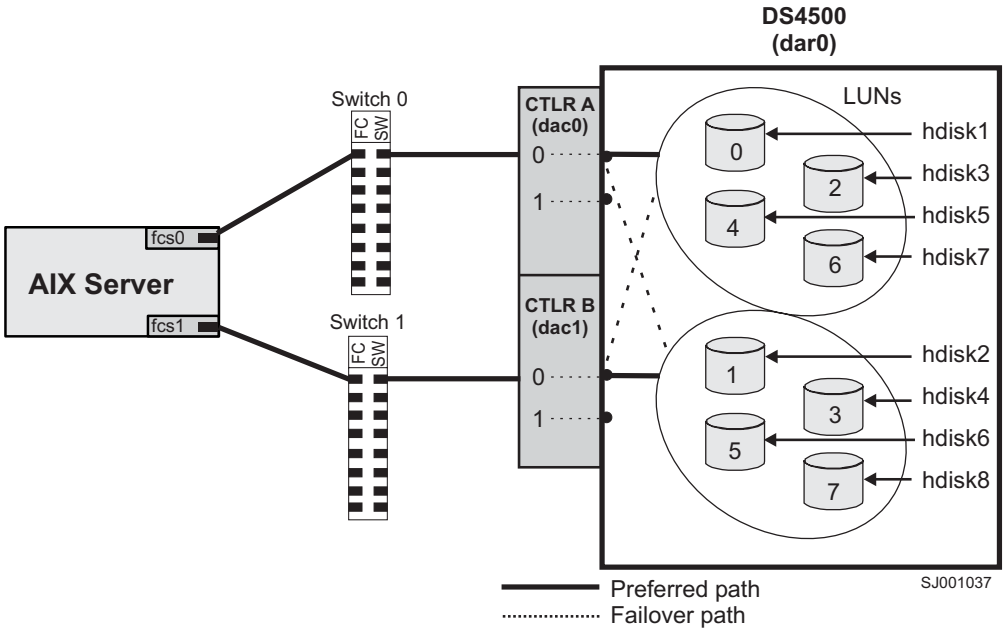


Figure 8. DS4000/AIX system configuration

Performing initial device discovery

Complete these steps to perform the initial device discovery.

Before you begin: Ensure that the DS4000 storage subsystem has been set up, LUNs have been assigned to the host, and the RDAC driver has been installed.

1. Type the following command to probe for the new devices:

```
# cfgmgr -v
```

   Note: In a SAN configuration, the devices do not log into the SAN switch until you run **cfgmgr**.

2. Type the following command:

```
# lsdev -Cc disk
```

3. Examine the output of the **lsdev -Cc disk** command to ensure that the RDAC software recognizes the DS4000 logical drives, as shown in the following list:
   - Each DS4300 logical drive is recognized as a “1722 (600) Disk Array Device”.
   - Each DS4400 logical drive is recognized as a “1742 (700) Disk Array Device”.
   - Each DS4500 logical drive is recognized as a “1742-900 Disk Array Device”.

   The following example shows the output of the **lsdev -Cc disk** command for a set of DS4500 LUNs:

```
# lsdev -Cc disk
hdisk0 Available 10-88-00-8,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk32 Available 31-08-01     1742-900     Disk Array Device
hdisk33 Available 91-08-01     1742-900     Disk Array Device
hdisk34 Available 31-08-01     1742-900     Disk Array Device
hdisk35 Available 91-08-01     1742-900     Disk Array Device
```

   Important: You might discover that the configuration process has created two dacs and two dars on one DS4000 subsystem. This situation can occur when your host is using a partition that does not have any associated LUNs. When that happens, the system cannot associate the two dacs under the correct dar. If there are no LUNs, the system generates two dacs as expected, but it also generates two dars.

   The following list shows the most common causes:
   - You create a partition and attach the LUNs to it, but you do not add the host ports to the partition. Therefore, the host ports remain in the default partition.
   - You replace one or more HBAs, but do not update the worldwide name (WWN) of the partition for the HBA.
   - You switch the DS4000 from one set of HBAs to another as part of a reconfiguration, and do not update the WWNs.

In each of these cases, resolve the problem, and run **cfgmgr** again. The system removes the extra dar, or moves it from the `Available` state to the `Defined` state. (If the system moves the dar into the `Defined` state, you can then delete it.)

Note: When you perform the initial device identification, the Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes of each device are updated with default values. In most cases and for most configurations, the default values are satisfactory. However, there are some values that can be modified for maximum performance and availability. See “Viewing and setting Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes” on page 55.

See “Using the lsattr command to view ODM attributes” on page 61 for information about using the **lsattr** command to view attribute settings on an AIX system.

Verifying the installation and configuration

After you have performed the initial device identification, complete the following procedures to verify that all of your DS4000 device names and paths are correct and that AIX recognizes your dars, dacs, and hdisks.

- “Identifying the controller ID numbers”
- “Identifying device names and bus numbers” on page 48
- “Identifying logical drives by operating system device names” on page 53
- “Identifying FlashCopy logical drive types” on page 54

Tip: Verify your installation and configuration before you mount your file systems and install your applications.

Identifying the controller ID numbers

Choose one of the following options to identify the controller ID number of a dac:

- “Using the lsattr -El command”
- “Using the SMClient Controller Properties window”

Using the lsattr -El command

1. Type the **lsattr -El** command, as follows:

```
# lsattr -El dacname
```

   where *dacname* is the name of the dac whose controller ID number you want to identify.

2. Find the value of the `controller_SN` attribute, as shown in the following example. This value is the controller ID number of dac1.

```
# lsattr -El dac1
GLM_type        low                GLM type                 False
alt_held_reset  no                 Alternate held in reset  False
cache_size      1024               Cache Size in MBytes     False
controller_SN   1T14148774         Controller serial number False
ctrl_type       1742-0900          Controller Type          False
location                           Location Label           True
lun_id          0x0                Logical Unit Number      False
node_name       0x200400a0b80f434d FC Node Name             False
passive_control no                 Passive controller       False
scsi_id         0x11a00            SCSI ID                  False
utm_lun_id      none               Logical Unit Number      False
ww_name         0x200500a0b80f434e World Wide Name          False
```

Using the SMClient Controller Properties window

1. In the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window, right-click a controller and select **Properties**. The Controller Properties window opens.
2. In the Controller Properties window, find the value of the `Serial number` attribute. In the example shown in Figure 9 on page 48, the controller in slot A has the controller ID number (serial number) 1T14148774, and is represented by dac1.

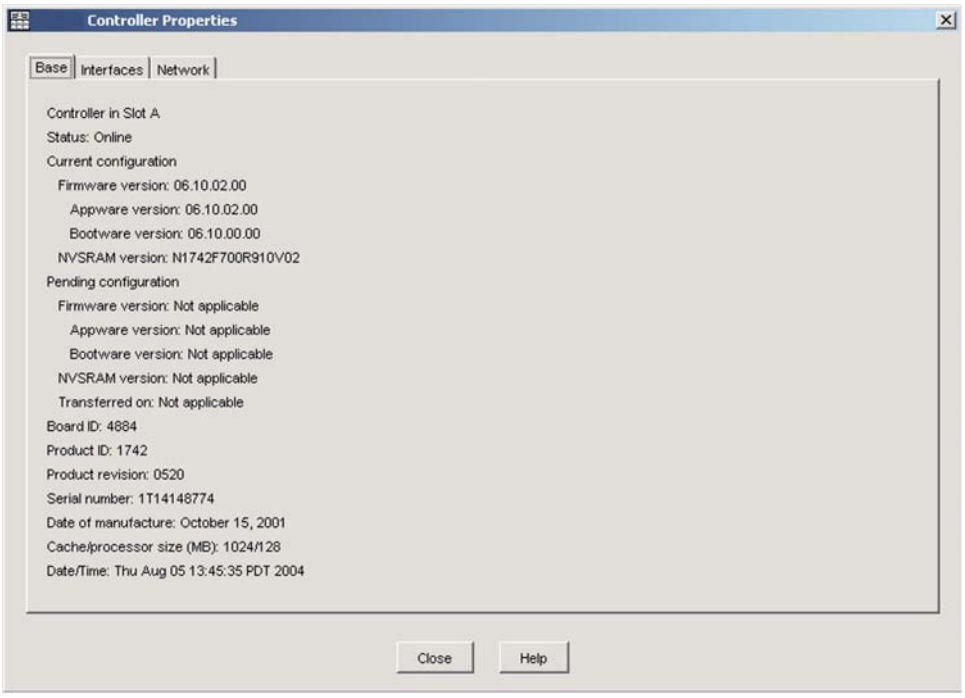


Figure 9. Controller Properties window

Identifying device names and bus numbers

As mentioned previously in this chapter, the RDAC software uses *dars* to represent the disk array routers, *dacs* to represent the disk array controllers, and *hdisks* to represent the logical drives.

After these operating system device names are found, you can use one or more of the following methods in AIX to get information about device names, bus numbers, and other attributes. You can then use this information to correlate the device names with their logical drives and preferred and alternate paths:

"Using the lsdev command"
The **lsdev** command displays devices and their characteristics. **lsdev** also shows the state of the devices at startup time, or the last time that the **cfgmgr -v** command was run.

"Using the fget_config command" on page 50
The **fget_config** command displays controllers and hdisks that are associated with a specified DS4000 (dar). **fget_config** also shows the current state and logical drive (hdisk) ownership.

"Using the lsattr command" on page 52
The **lsattr** command displays device attributes and possible values. Attributes are only updated at startup time, or the last time that the **cfgmgr -v** command was run.

Using the lsdev command

The examples in this section show you how to use the lsdev command to show the status of dars, dacs and hdisks.

lsdev example 1: This example shows the use of the **lsdev** command to view the status of the dar, which represents a DS4000 storage subsystem.

In the example, dar0 is a machine type 1742, which is a DS4400. It is in the `Available` state, which is the state at the time when the device was last configured by AIX.

```
# lsdev -C |grep dar0
dar0       Available               1742     (700) Disk Array Router
```

lsdev example 2: This example shows the use of the **lsdev** command to view the status of two dacs, which represent the DS4000 storage subsystem controllers.

In the example, as in the previous example, a DS4400 is shown in an `Available` state. Each dac has its own location code, or *path*, which are represented by the values `11-08-01` and `14-08-01`. Each AIX system has its own set of location codes that describe the internal path of that device, including bus and host-adapter locations.

See the service manual for your system type to identify device locations.

```
# lsdev -C |grep dac
dac0       Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Controller
dac1       Available 14-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Controller
```

lsdev example 3: This example shows the use of the **lsdev** command to view the status and location codes of eight DS4400 hdisks.

In the example, note that the location codes of the odd-numbered hdisks correspond to the location code of dac0 that is listed in the previous example, and that the location codes of the even-numbered hdisks correspond to the location code of dac1. This means that the preferred I/O path for hdisks 1, 3, 5, and 7 is through dac0, and the failover path is through dac1. Conversely, the preferred path for hdisks 2, 4, 6, and 8 is through dac1, and failover path is through dac0.

```
# lsdev -Cc |grep hdisk
hdisk0     Available 40-60-00-4,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk1     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk2     Available 14-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk3     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk4     Available 14-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk5     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk6     Available 14-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk7     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk8     Available 14-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
```

lsdev example 4: This example shows the use of the **lsdev** command with the **grep** command to search for the first location code two numbers. In this way, you can determine the full preferred path from hdisk to Fibre Channel fabric.

```
# lsdev -C|grep 11-08
fcs0       Available 11-08         FC Adapter
fscsi0     Available 11-08-01      FC SCSI I/O Controller Protocol Device
dac0       Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Controller
hdisk1     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk3     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk5     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk7     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
hdisk8     Available 11-08-01      1742     (700) Disk Array Device
```

Using the fget_config command

You can use the **fget_config** command to display current configuration information for a DS4000 subsystem.

Use the following command syntax for the **fget_config** command:

```
fget_config -A | -l | -v dar_name
```

- A Displays output for all the configured dars in the subsystem. If you use this parameter, do not specify a dar name.

- l Displays output only for the dar that you specify.

- v Displays more information about the dar or dars, such as the user array names that were created when you configured the DS4000 subsystem.

fget_config example 1: This example shows a sample output from the **fget_config -l dar3** command. A dac can be `Active`, `Passive`, or `Offline`. Only dacs that are in `Active` state are used for I/O. In the output, you can see that dar3 consists of dac6 and dac9.

```
# fget_config -l dar3

dac6 ACTIVE dac9 ACTIVE
hdisk26  dac9
hdisk27  dac6
hdisk28  dac9
hdisk29  dac6
hdisk30  dac9
hdisk31  dac6
hdisk32  dac9
hdisk33  dac9
hdisk83  dac6
```

fget_config example 2: This example shows a sample output from the **fget_config -vl dar3** command. Note that using the **-v** parameter causes the user array name and the LUN names to be displayed:

```
#  fget_config -vl dar3

User array name = 'D59 DS4500 #1'
dac6 ACTIVE dac9 ACTIVE

Disk     DAC   LUN Logical Drive
utm             10
hdisk26  dac9    1 multipart11
hdisk27  dac6    2 multipart12
hdisk28  dac9    3 multipart13
hdisk29  dac6    4 multipart14
hdisk30  dac9    5 multipart15
hdisk31  dac6    6 multipart16
hdisk32  dac9    7 multipart17
hdisk33  dac9    9 multipart19
hdisk83  dac6    8 multipart18
```

fget_config example 3: This example shows a sample output from the **fget_config -A** command. Note that using the **-A** parameter causes all the dars to be displayed:

```
#   fget_config -A

---dar0---                                  ---dar2---

dac3 ACTIVE dac0 PASSIVE                    dac2 ACTIVE dac5 ACTIVE
hdisk4   dac3                               hdisk25  dac5
hdisk5   dac3
hdisk6   dac3                               ---dar3---
hdisk7   dac3
hdisk8   dac3                               dac6 ACTIVE dac9 ACTIVE
hdisk10  dac3                               hdisk26  dac9
hdisk11  dac3                               hdisk27  dac6
hdisk12  dac3                               hdisk28  dac9
hdisk13  dac3                               hdisk29  dac6
hdisk14  dac3                               hdisk30  dac9
                                            hdisk31  dac6
---dar1---                                  hdisk32  dac9
                                            hdisk33  dac9
dac1 ACTIVE dac4 ACTIVE                     hdisk83  dac6
hdisk15  dac1
hdisk16  dac1
hdisk17  dac4
hdisk18  dac1
hdisk19  dac4
hdisk20  dac1
hdisk21  dac4
hdisk22  dac1
hdisk23  dac4
hdisk24  dac1
```

fget_config example 4: This example shows a sample output from the **fget_config -Av** command. Note that using the **-v** parameter causes the user array names and the LUN names to display:

```
#    fget_config -Av

---dar0---

User array name = 'D59S Flute-2
(DS4500) #1'
dac3 ACTIVE dac0 PASSIVE

Disk     DAC   LUN Logical Drive
hdisk4   dac3    0 dualpart0
hdisk5   dac3    1 dualpart1
hdisk6   dac3    2 dualpart2
hdisk7   dac3    4 dualpart4
hdisk8   dac3    5 dualpart5
hdisk10  dac3    8 dualpart8
hdisk11  dac3    9 dualpart9
hdisk12  dac3   10 dualpart10
hdisk13  dac3   11 dualpart11
hdisk14  dac3   12 dualpart12

---dar1---

User array name = 'D59 DS4500 #1'
dac1 ACTIVE dac4 ACTIVE

Disk     DAC   LUN Logical Drive
utm             10
hdisk15  dac1    0 multipart20
hdisk16  dac1    1 multipart1
hdisk17  dac4    2 multipart2
hdisk18  dac1    3 multipart3
hdisk19  dac4    4 multipart4
hdisk20  dac1    5 multipart5
hdisk21  dac4    6 multipart6
hdisk22  dac1    7 multipart7
hdisk23  dac4    8 multipart8
hdisk24  dac1    9 multipart9

---dar2---

User array name = 'D59S DS4500 #2'
dac2 ACTIVE dac5 ACTIVE

Disk     DAC   LUN Logical Drive
utm             31
hdisk25  dac5    0 1

---dar3---

User array name = 'D59 DS4500 #1'
dac6 ACTIVE dac9 ACTIVE

Disk     DAC   LUN Logical Drive
utm             10
hdisk26  dac9    1 multipart11
hdisk27  dac6    2 multipart12
hdisk28  dac9    3 multipart13
hdisk29  dac6    4 multipart14
hdisk30  dac9    5 multipart15
hdisk31  dac6    6 multipart16
hdisk32  dac9    7 multipart17
hdisk33  dac9    9 multipart19
hdisk83  dac6    8 multipart18
```

Using the lsattr command

You can also use the **lsattr** command to find out which controller owns a particular hdisk.

The following example shows portions of the outputs from several **lsattr** commands.

In the example, hdisk1 belongs to the controller represented by `dac0`. The hdisk has the same SCSI ID as the controller (dac) that owns it.

```
# lsattr -El dac0
GLM_type        low                GLM type                 False
alt_held_reset  no                 Alternate held in reset  False
cache_size      1024               Cache Size in MBytes     False
controller_SN   1T23559428         Controller serial number False
ctrl_type       1742-0900          Controller Type          False
location                           Location Label           True
lun_id          0x0                Logical Unit Number      False
node_name       0x200400a0b80f434d FC Node Name             False
passive_control no                 Passive controller       False
scsi_id         0x11100            SCSI ID                  False
utm_lun_id      none               Logical Unit Number      False
ww_name         0x200400a0b80f434e World Wide Name          False


# lsattr -El dac1
GLM_type        low                GLM type                 False
alt_held_reset  no                 Alternate held in reset  False
cache_size      1024               Cache Size in MBytes     False
controller_SN   1T23559493         Controller serial number False
ctrl_type       1742-0900          Controller Type          False
location                           Location Label           True
lun_id          0x0                Logical Unit Number      False
node_name       0x200400a0b80f434d FC Node Name             False
passive_control no                 Passive controller       False
scsi_id         0x11a00            SCSI ID                  False
utm_lun_id      none               Logical Unit Number      False
ww_name         0x200500a0b80f434e World Wide Name          False


# lsattr -El hdisk1
----------- Parts removed:
scsi_id       0x11100              SCSI ID                  False
size          4096                 Size in Mbytes           False
write_cache   yes                  Write Caching enabled    False
```

Identifying logical drives by operating system device names

The **lsattr** command provides detailed information about a logical drive, including information that allows you to map the system device name to the logical drive on the DS4000 storage subsystem.

The following example shows the output of an **lsattr** command for a LUN named hdisk4:

```
# lsattr -El hdisk4
pvid          none                                Physical volume identifier            False
q_type        simple                              Queuing Type                          False
queue_depth   30                                  Queue Depth                           True
reserve_lock  yes                                 RESERVE device on open                True
write_cache   yes                                 Write Caching enabled                 True
size          6062                                Size in Mbytes                        False
raid_level    0                                   RAID Level                            False
rw_timeout    30                                  Read/Write Timeout value              True
reassign_to   120                                 Reassign Timeout value                True
scsi_id       0x11000                             SCSI ID                               False
lun_id        0x0002000000000000                  Logical Unit Number                   False
cache_method  fast_write                          Write Caching method                  True
prefetch_mult 0                                   Multiple of blocks to prefetch on read True
ieee_volname  600A0B80000F14AF000003D140C046A2    IEEE Unique volume name               False
```

In the example, you can see that hdisk4 is a 6 GB LUN of type RAID 0, with a LUN ID of 2, and an IEEE volume name of 600A0B80000F14AF000003D140C046A2.

You can make a more exact correlation using the distinctive *ieee_volname* attribute. The value of this attribute on the AIX host is the same as the value of the *Logical Drive ID* on the DS4000 subsystem. You can see the *Logical Drive ID* in the Change Mapping window of DS4000 Storage Manager, which is shown in Figure 10.

To view the Change Mapping window, click the **Mappings view** tab in the Subsystem Management window. Right-click the name of the logical drive whose attributes you want to see, and select **Change Mapping**.

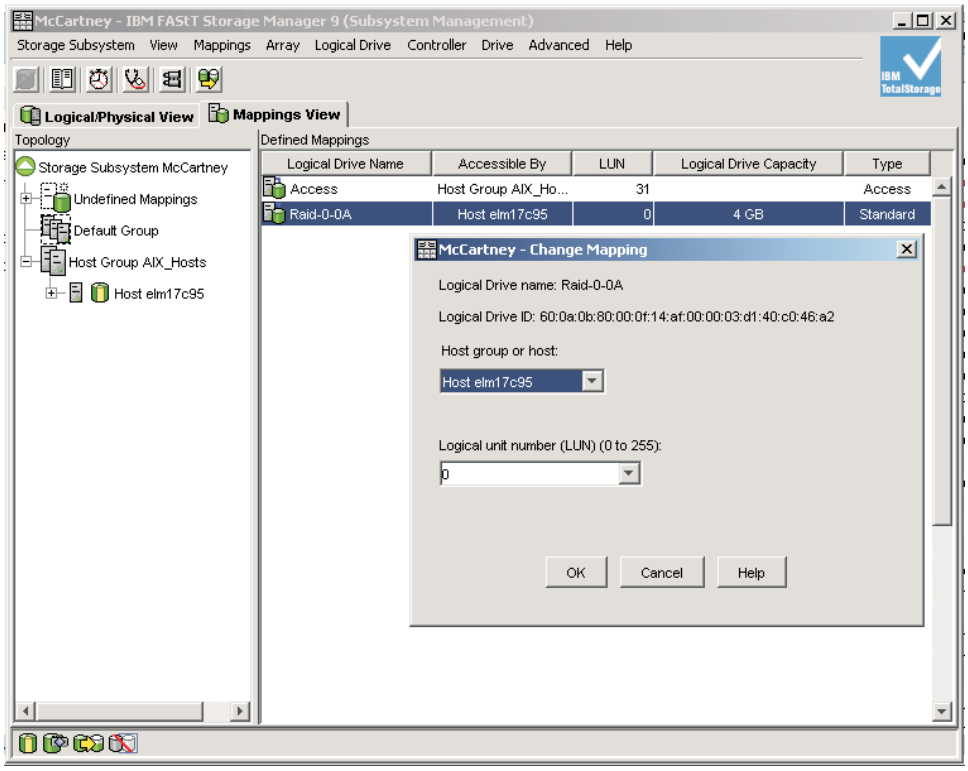


Figure 10. Change Mappings window

You can also identify the system disk name by viewing the *Subsystem ID (SSID)* attribute in the Logical Drive Properties window of DS4000 Storage Manager. The value of the *Subsystem ID (SSID)* attribute on the DS4000 subsystem is the same as the value of the *lun_id* attribute on the AIX host.

To open the Logical Drive Properties window, right-click the name of the logical drive in the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window and select **Properties**.

Identifying FlashCopy logical drive types

Complete the following steps to identify FlashCopy logical drive types:

1. Run the following command to list available logical drives:

```
# lsdev -Cc disk
```

A list of available logical drives displays, as shown in the following example:

```
[root@hostname] / # lsdev -Cc disk |pg
hdisk0  Available 40-60-00-4,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk1  Available 40-60-00-8,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk2  Available 11-08-01     1742-900     (900) Disk Array Device
hdisk3  Available 11-08-01     1742-900     (900) Disk Array Device
hdisk4 Available 11-08-01     1742-900     (900) Disk Array Snapshot
```

The FlashCopy array is identified by the term `Disk Array Snapshot`.

2. Run the following command to display the state of each controller in a DS4000 array:

```
# fget_config -Av
```

A list displays, as shown in the following example:

```
[root@hostname] / # fget_config -Av

---dar0---

User array name = 'DS4000 System 1'
dac0 ACTIVE dac1 ACTIVE
dac0-hdisk2      Raid-0-0B
dac1-hdisk3      Raid-0-1B
dac1-hdisk4      Raid-3-0A-1    Snapshot Volume
```

The FlashCopy logical drive is identified by the term `Snapshot Volume`.

For more information about the **lsdev** and **fget_config** commands, see “Identifying device names and bus numbers” on page 48.

Viewing and setting Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes

Some of the ODM attributes are for information purposes only. These information-only attributes show how the DS4000 storage server is configured, or its current state. You can modify other attributes using SMIT or by using the AIX **chdev -p** command.

Attribute definitions

The following tables list definitions and values of the ODM attributes for dars, dacs and hdisks:

- Table 14 on page 56: *Attributes for dar devices*
- Table 15 on page 57: *Attributes for dac devices*
- Table 16 on page 58: *Attributes for hdisk devices*

Notes:

1. Attributes with `True` in the `Changeable` column can be modified from their default settings.
2. Attributes with `False` in the `Changeable` column are for informational or state purposes only. However, some attributes with `False` in the `Changeable` column can be modified using DS4000 Storage Manager.

3. The **lsattr -el** command is another way to determine which attributes can be modified. Attributes that can be modified display `True` in the last column of the **lsattr -el** output. You can also display the default values by using the **lsattr -dl** command. See “Using the lsattr command to view ODM attributes” on page 61 for more information.

Table 14. Attributes for dar devices

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
act_controller	List of controllers in the active state at the time of configuration.	False	Set at configuration time by the RDAC software.
all_controller	List of controllers that comprise this array; usually there are two dac devices.	False	Set at configuration time by the RDAC software.
held_in_reset	Name of the controller that was in the held-in-reset state at the time of configuration, or **none** if no controllers were in that state.	True	Set at configuration time by the RDAC software. Should not be changed.
load_balancing	Indicator that shows whether load balancing is enabled (**yes**) or disabled (**no**); see the definition of the *balance_freq* attribute for more information.	True	Yes or No. **Attention:** You should only set the *load_balancing* attribute to **yes** in single-host configurations.
autorecovery	Indicator that shows whether the device returns the array to dual-active mode when it detects proper operation of both paths and controllers (**yes**) or not (**no**).	True	Yes or No. See restrictions on use.
hlthchk_freq	Number that specifies how often health checks are performed, in seconds.	True	1 - 9999. Should not be changed
aen_freq	Number that specifies how often polled AEN checks are performed, in seconds.	True	1 - 9999. Should not be changed
balance_freq	If *load_balancing* is enabled, number that specifies how often the system performs load-balancing on the array, in seconds.	True	1 - 9999 - should not be changed

Table 14. Attributes for dar devices (continued)

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
fast_write_ok	Indicator that shows whether fast-write write-caching is available for this system (**yes**) or not (**no**).	False	Yes or No. State of DS4000 configuration.
cache_size	Cache size for both controllers, in megabytes; **0** if the sizes do not match.	False	512 or 1024. Set by DS4000.
switch_retries	Number that specifies how many times to retry failed switches, in integers.	True	0 - 255. Default: 5 For most configurations, the default is the best setting. If you are using HACMP, it can be helpful to set the value to **0**. **Attention:** You cannot use concurrent firmware download if you change the default setting.

Table 15. Attributes for dac devices

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
passive_control	Indicator that shows whether this controller was in passive state at the time of configuration (**yes**) or not (**no**).	False	Yes or No. State of DS4000 configuration.
alt_held_reset	Indicator that shows whether the alternate controller was in the held-in-reset state at the time of configuration (**yes**) or not (**no**).	False	Yes or No. State of DS4000 configuration.
controller_SN	Serial number of this controller.	False	Set by DS4000.
ctrl_type	Type of array this controller belongs to. A value of value of **1722** indicates DS4300; a value of **1742** indicates DS4400; a value of **1742-900** indicates DS4500.	False	1742, 1722, 1742-900. Set by DS4000.

Table 15. Attributes for dac devices (continued)

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
cache_size	Cache size of this controller, in megabytes.	False	512, 1024. Set by DS4000.
scsi_id	SCSI identifier of this controller.	False	Set by SAN, reported by AIX.
lun_id	Logical unit number of this controller.	False	Set by DS4000.
utm_lun_id	Logical unit number of this controller, or **none** if UTM (access logical drives) is not enabled.	False	0 - 31. Set by DS4000 Storage Manager.
node_name	Name of the Fibre Channel node.	False	Set by DS4000
location	User-defined location label for this controller; the system does not use this value.	True	Set by DS4000 Storage Manager.
ww_name	Fibre Channel worldwide name of this controller.	False	Set by DS4000.
GLM_type	GLM type used for this controller.	False	High or Low. Set by DS4000.

Table 16. Attributes for hdisk devices

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
pvid	AIX physical volume identifier, or **none** if not set.	False	Set by AIX.
q_type	Queueing type for this device; must be set to **simple**.	False	Set by AIX. Must be “simple”.
queue_depth	Number that specifies the depth of the queue based on system configuration; reduce this number if the array is returning a BUSY status on a consistent basis.	True	1 - 64 **Note:** See “Setting the queue depth for hdisk devices” on page 60 for important information about setting this attribute.
reserve_lock	Indicator that shows whether the fcparray issues a SCSI Remove command every time a device is opened or when a Test Unit Ready sequence is issued by the driver (**yes**) or not (**no**).	True	Yes or No.

Table 16. Attributes for hdisk devices (continued)

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
write_cache	Indicator that shows whether write-caching is enabled on this device (**yes**) or not (**no**); see the definition of the *cache_method* attribute for more information.	False	Yes or No.
size	Size of this logical drive.	False	Set by DS4000.
raid_level	Number that specifies the RAID level of this device.	False	0, 1, 3, 5. Set by DS4000 Storage Manager.
rw_timeout	Number that specifies the read/write timeout value for each read/write command to this array, in seconds; usually set to 30.	True	30 - 180. Should not be changed from default.
reassign_to	Number that specifies the timeout value for FC reassign operations, in seconds; usually set to 120.	True	0 - 1000. Should not be changed from default.
scsi_id	SCSI identifier at the time of configuration.	False	Set by SAN, reported by AIX.
lun_id	Logical unit number of this device.	False	0 - 255. Set by DS4000 Storage Manager.

Table 16. Attributes for hdisk devices (continued)

Attribute	Definition	Changeable (T/F)	Possible value
cache_method	If *write_cache* is enabled, the write-caching method of this array; set to one of the following: • **default**. Default mode; the word ″default″ is not seen if *write_cache* is set to yes. • **fast_write**. Fast-write (battery-backed, mirrored write-cache) mode. • **fw_unavail**. Fast-write mode was specified but could not be enabled; write-caching is not in use. • **fast_load**. Fast-load (non-battery-backed, non-mirrored write-cache) mode. • **fl_unavail**. Fast-load mode was specified but could not be enabled.	False	Default, fast_write, fast_load, fw_unavail, fl_unavail.
prefetch_mult	Number of blocks to be prefetched into read cache for each block read.	False	0 - 100.
ieee_volname	IEEE unique logical drive name identifier for this logical drive.	False	Set by DS4000.

Setting the queue depth for hdisk devices

Setting the *queue_depth* attribute to the appropriate value is important for system performance. If you have a large DS4000 configuration with many logical drives and hosts attached, use this setting for high availability.

This section shows how to set the *queue_depth* attribute using the **chdev -l** command. To make the attribute changes permanent in the Customized Devices object class, use **chdev -P**.

Attention: If you set this attribute incorrectly, it could result in the loss of file systems.

Use one of the following formulas to determine the maximum queue depth for your system.

- **Storage Manager controller firmware versions 06.1x.xx.xx or 05.4x.xx.xx**

  On DS4000 storage systems that are running Storage Manager controller firmware versions 05.4x.xx.xx, 06.1x.xx.xx, or later, use the following formula to determine the maximum queue depth:

  ```
  2048 / (number-of-hosts * LUNs-per-host )
  ```

  For example, a system with four hosts, each with 32 LUNs, would have a maximum queue depth of 16:

  ```
  2048 / ( 4 * 32 ) = 16
  ```

  In this case, you would set the *queue_depth* attribute for hdisk*X* as follows:

```
# chdev -l hdiskX -a queue_depth=8 -P
```

- **Storage Manager controller firmware version 05.30.xx.xx**

  On DS4000 storage systems that are running Storage Manager controller firmware version 05.30.xx.xx or earlier, use the following formula to determine the maximum queue depth:

  ```
  512 / (number-of-hosts * LUNs-per-host )
  ```

  For example, a system with four hosts, each with 32 LUNs, would have a maximum queue depth of 4:

  ```
  512 / ( 4 * 32 ) = 4
  ```

  In this case, you would set the *queue_depth* attribute for hdisk*X* as follows:

```
# chdev -l hdiskX -a queue_depth=4 -P
```

Using the lsattr command to view ODM attributes

To view the Object Data Manager (ODM) attribute settings for dars, dacs, and hdisks, use the **lsattr** command, as follows:

- To view the default settings, type **lsattr -Dl**.
- To view the attributes that are currently set on the system, type **lsattr -El**.

The following **lsattr -El** output examples show ODM attribute settings for a dar, a dac and an hdisk.

Example 1: Attribute settings for dar0:

```
# lsattr -El dar0
act_controller dac0,dac1 Active Controllers                          False
aen_freq       600       Polled AEN frequency in seconds             True
all_controller dac0,dac1 Available Controllers                       False
autorecovery   no        Autorecover after failure is corrected      True
balance_freq   600       Dynamic Load Balancing frequency in seconds True
cache_size     128       Cache size for both controllers             False
fast_write_ok  yes       Fast Write available                        False
held_in_reset  none      Held-in-reset controller                    True
hlthchk_freq   600       Health check frequency in seconds           True
load_balancing no        Dynamic Load Balancing                      True
switch_retries 5         Number of times to retry failed switches    True
```

Example 2: Attribute settings for dac0:

```
# lsattr -El dac0
GLM_type        low               GLM type                False
alt_held_reset  no                Alternate held in reset  False
cache_size      128               Cache Size in MBytes     False
controller_SN   1T24594458        Controller serial number False
ctrl_type       1722-600          Controller Type          False
location                          Location Label           True
lun_id          0x0               Logical Unit Number      False
node_name       0x200200a0b80f14af FC Node Name            False
passive_control no                Passive controller       False
scsi_id         0x11000           SCSI ID                  False
utm_lun_id      0x001f000000000000 Logical Unit Number     False
ww_name         0x200200a0b80f14b0 World Wide Name         False
```

Example 3: Attribute settings for hdisk174:

```
lsattr -El hdisk174
cache_method   fast_write                      Write Caching method                   False
ieee_volname   600A0B80000F4365000001063F7076A7 IEEE Unique volume name               False
lun_id         0x0069000000000000              Logical Unit Number                    False
prefetch_mult  12                              Multiple of blocks to prefetch on read False
pvid           none                            Physical volume identifier             False
q_type         simple                          Queuing Type                           False
queue_depth    2                               Queue Depth                            True
raid_level     5                               RAID Level                             False
reassign_to    120                             Reassign Timeout value                 True
reserve_lock   yes                             RESERVE device on open                 True
rw_timeout     30                              Read/Write Timeout value               True
scsi_id        0x11f00                         SCSI ID                                False
size           2048                            Size in Mbytes                         False
write_cache    yes                             Write Caching enabled                  False
```

Additional AIX configuration information

This section contains the following procedures:

- “Disabling DS4000 cache mirroring”
- “Using fast I/O failure for Fibre Channel devices” on page 63
- “Using dynamic tracking of Fibre Channel devices” on page 64
- “Using dynamic capacity expansion and dynamic volume expansion” on page 64

Disabling DS4000 cache mirroring

Cache mirroring is enabled on the DS4000 storage server by default. However, you might want to disable this function in certain environments where high performance is a critical factor (such as streaming media applications).

For most applications, cache mirroring should remain enabled.

Attention: You must be careful when you disable cache mirroring, particularly when the write cache function is enabled.

- If a controller failure or a power down occurs, data that is in the write cache (but not written to the physical disk media) might be lost. This can result in corrupted files, file systems, or databases.

- On AIX 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3, cache mirroring is *not* automatically re-enabled the next time the system is restarted or when you run the **cfgmgr** command.

Steps for disabling cache mirroring

In DS4000 Storage Manager, complete the following steps to disable cache mirroring.

Before you begin: If write cache is enabled, make backups of all data before disabling cache mirroring.

1. In the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window, right-click the logical drive on which you want to disable cache mirroring, and select **Change** —> **Cache Settings**.
2. In the Change Cache Settings window, clear the *Enable write caching with mirroring* check box.
3. Click **OK**.

Notes:

1. When a LUN is opened that is running with write cache enabled and cache mirroring disabled, an FCP array warning message displays. The warning displays again every 24 hours until cache mirroring is enabled again. See FCP_ARRAY_ERR25, which is described in “Resolving disk array errors” on page 66.

Using fast I/O failure for Fibre Channel devices

I/O failover occurs when a Fibre Channel adapter driver detects a link failure on the fabric between the switch and the DS4000 storage server. You can change the failover characteristics by setting the fscsi device attribute **fc_err_recov** to one of the following settings.

fast_fail Enables fast I/O failure.

If the Fibre Channel adapter driver detects that a link was lost between the switch and the DS4000, it waits a few seconds to allow the fabric to stabilize. If **fast_fail** is specified, the adapter then begins failing all I/O at the adapter driver if it detects that the device is not on the fabric. Any new I/O or future retries of the failed I/O are failed immediately.

Fast I/O failure can be useful in multipath configurations. It can decrease the I/O fail times due to the loss of a link between the storage device and the switch, and can allow faster failover to alternate paths.

delayed_fail Default setting.

If **delayed_fail** is specified, I/O failure proceeds as normal; retries are not immediately failed, and failover takes longer than it does if **fast_fail** is specified.

In single-path configurations, especially configurations with a single path to a paging device, the **delayed_fail** setting should be used.

Example: You can enable fast I/O failure by setting this attribute, as shown in the following example. Be sure to stop all I/O and put the fscsi device into a `Defined` state before you set the attribute.

```
chdev -l fscsi0 -a fc_err_recov=fast_fail
```

Notes:

1. The **fast_fail** attribute only affects failover that occurs between the switch and the DS4000 storage server. It does not affect failover that occurs between the host and the switch.
2. Set the **fast_fail** attribute on each HBA that is configured to the DS4000 storage server.
3. You can use fast I/O failure only in a SAN environment. You cannot use it in a direct-attach environment.

Using dynamic tracking of Fibre Channel devices

You can dynamically track Fibre Channel devices, which allows the dynamic movement of a Fibre Channel path between the fabric switch and the DS4000 subsystem by suspending I/O for 15 seconds while the move occurs.

Exception: You can only use dynamic tracking on AIX 5.2 and 5.3.

You can enable or disable dynamic tracking by setting the fscsi device attribute **dyntrk** to one of the following settings:

yes Enables dynamic tracking.

If dynamic tracking is enabled, the Fibre Channel adapter detects when the Fibre Channel node port ID of a device changes. It reroutes the traffic that is destined for that device to the new worldwide port name (WWPN) while the devices are still online.

For example, you can move a cable from one switch port to another while the devices are still online, and no failover occurs if you complete the move within 15 seconds. After 15 seconds, failover occurs.

Tip: The ports must be in the same zone on the same switch.

no Default setting.

If dynamic tracking is not enabled, you must take the devices offline before you move a cable from one port to another. Otherwise, failover occurs.

Example: You can enable dynamic tracking by setting this attribute, as shown in the following example. Be sure to stop all I/O and put the fscsi device into a `Defined` state before you set the attribute.

```
chdev -l fscsi0 -a dyntrk=yes
```

Notes:

1. Set the **dyntrk** attribute on each HBA that is configured to the DS4000 storage server.
2. You can use dynamic tracking only in a SAN environment. You cannot use it in a direct-attach environment.

Using dynamic capacity expansion and dynamic volume expansion

Dynamic volume expansion (DVE) is dynamic on the DS4000, but it requires manual intervention for AIX to recognize the new logical drive capacity. This section explains how to use DVE with AIX.

Exception: You can only use DVE on AIX 5.2 and 5.3.

Before you begin: Ensure that there is available free capacity within the array. You can check free capacity availability using DS4000 Storage Manager, in the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window. If there is not enough free capacity, and extra drives are available, perform a dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) operation before you perform the DVE operation. A DCE operation increases the capacity of the array by adding physical disks.

Performing a dynamic capacity expansion operation

Complete the following steps to perform a DCE:

1. In the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window, right-click the logical drive whose capacity you want to increase, and select **Increase Capacity**. The Increase Logical Drive Capacity — Additional Instructions window opens.
2. Read the additional instructions and click **OK**. The Increase Logical Drive Capacity window opens.
3. Type the amount that you want to increase the logical drive, and click **OK**.

You see an hourglass on every logical drive within the array. You must wait for the process to complete before you can begin any AIX intervention.

Tip: If the DS4000 is busy, the process might take several hours to complete.

After you have ensured that there is sufficient free capacity within the array, you can perform DVE, as described in the next topic.

Requirement: You must either reboot the system or run the **cfgmgr** command before you can view the additional capacity using the ODM attribute.

Performing a dynamic volume expansion operation

Complete the following steps to perform a DVE on the AIX host. For more information about expanding Logical Volume Manager (LVM) logical drives, see the man page for the **chvg** command .

1. Unmount the file systems from the LVM logical drive group that has been expanded, by typing the following command:

```
umount mount_point
```

   where *mount_point* is the name of the filesystem that is being unmounted.
2. Change the logical drive group by typing the following command:

```
chvg -g logical drive group name
```

   where the *logical drive group name* is the name of the associated LVM logical drive group.

   Note: If you see a warning that the logical drive group cannot be imported to AIX 5.1 or lower, ignore the warning. It is an error. You can import the logical drive group to AIX 5.1 (or lower.)
3. Mount the file systems.

Notes:

1. You might have to run the **varyoffvg** command, and then the **varyonvg** command, on the logical drive group for LVM to see the size change on the disk. However, the new capacity is available for use by the operating system.
2. You cannot resize while the logical drive group is activated in classic or enhanced concurrent mode.

3. You cannot resize the root logical drive group.

Resolving disk array errors

This section shows a list of possible disk array errors that could be reported in the AIX error log. You can view the AIX error log by running the **errpt -a** command.

You can also check your DS4000 Storage Manager Major Event log (MEL) to find out whether there is any correlation between the host, SAN, and DS4000 storage subsystem.

You might need to validate your configuration or replace defective hardware to correct the situation.

Note: For more information about troubleshooting, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel Hardware Maintenance Manual and Problem Determination Guide.*

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR1** *ARRAY OPERATION ERROR*

  A permanent hardware error involving the disk array media.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR2** *ARRAY OPERATION ERROR*

  A permanent hardware error.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR3** ARRAY OPERATION ERROR

  A permanent error detected by the array adapter.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR4** *ARRAY OPERATION ERROR*

  A temporary error within the array, communications, adapter, and so on.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR5** *UNDETERMINED ERROR*

  An undetermined error has occurred.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR6** *SUBSYSTEM COMPONENT FAILURE*

  A degradation condition has occurred other than a disk drive.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR7** *CONTROLLER HEALTH CHECK FAILURE*

  A health check on the passive controller has failed.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR8** *ARRAY CONTROLLER SWITCH*

  One array controller has become unavailable, so I/O has moved to the other controller.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR9** *ARRAY CONTROLLER SWITCH FAILURE*

  An array controller switch has failed.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR10** *ARRAY CONFIGURATION CHANGED*

  A logical unit has been moved from one controller to the other (most likely by the action of an alternate host).
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR11** *IMPROPER DRIVE TYPE FOR DUAL ACTIVE MODE*

  This error should not be possible on the 2102 array, and exists for history reasons only. FCP_ARRAY_ERR11 might be reused for a different error in the future.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR12** *POLLED AEN FAILURE*

  An automatic error notification has failed.
- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR13** *ARRAY INTER-CONTROLLER COMMUNICATION FAILURE*

  The controllers are unable to communicate with each other. This could result from one of the controllers being rebooted while the error log was being

generated. However, it could be a much more serious error that indicates a problem with the Fibre Channel connections.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR14** *ARRAY DRIVE FAILURE*

  A serious or unrecoverable error has been detected on a physical disk within the DS4000 subsystem. A system engineer might be able to obtain the exact cause from an analysis of the sense data.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR15** *CACHE BATTERY LOW/DATA LOSS POSSIBLE*

  If a controller card is replaced, it is likely that the cache batteries will be flat. It can take two days for the cache batteries to be fully recharged. During this time errors are logged in the error log. Do not replace the controller.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR16** *CACHE BATTERY CHARGE BELOW 87.5%*

  If a controller card is replaced, it is likely that the cache batteries will be flat. It can take two days for the cache batteries to be fully recharged. During this time errors are logged in the error log. Do not replace the controller.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR17** *WORLDWIDE NAME CHANGED*

  A controller has changed worldwide names (most likely either it was replaced without placing it in the reset state first, or the cabling was changed so that a different controller with the same SCSI ID is on the loop).

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR18** *RESERVATION CONFLICT*

  An operation failed because the disk array logical drive (LUN) is reserved by another host.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR19** *SNAPSHOT VOLUME'S REPOSITORY FULL*

  The repository capacity limit has been reached. To resolve this error you can increase the repository capacity.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR20** *SNAPSHOT OPERATION STOPPED BY ADMIN*

  The FlashCopy (snapshot) operation has been disabled or stopped. To resolve this error you can recreate the FlashCopy.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR21** *SNAPSHOT REPOSITORY METADATA ERROR*

  There was a problem with the metadata of the FlashCopy (snapshot) repository during the FlashCopy operation. To resolve this error you can recreate the FlashCopy.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR22** *REMOTE VOL MIRRORING: ILLEGAL I/O ORIGIN*

  The primary logical drive received I/O from a remote array, or the secondary logical drive received I/O from other than the primary logical drive. To resolve this error you can try the operation again.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR23** *SNAPSHOT OPERATION NOT ALLOWED*

  The repository capacity limit has been reached, so the FlashCopy (snapshot) operation has failed. To resolve this error you can delete or recreate the FlashCopy.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR24** *SNAPSHOT VOLUME'S REPOSITORY FULL*

  The repository capacity limit has been reached. To resolve this error you can delete or recreate the FlashCopy (snapshot).

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR25** *CACHED DATA WILL BE LOST IF CONTROLLER FAILS*

  This message is a warning that a disk array logical drive (LUN) is running with write cache enabled and cache mirroring disabled. The warning displays when the LUN is opened, and it displays again every 24 hours until cache mirroring is enabled again.

  If a controller failure or a power down occurs while the LUN is running in this mode, data that is in the write cache (but not written to the physical disk media) might be lost. This can result in corrupted files, file systems, or databases.

- **FCP_ARRAY_ERR26** *LOGICAL VOLUME IS WRITE PROTECTED*

  The status of the logical drive is read-only. The probable reason is that it is a secondary logical drive of a FlashCopy, VolumeCopy, or remote mirror pair. Check which relationship applies to the logical drive.

  – For FlashCopy, a status of read-only on the secondary logical drive usually indicates that the repository is full.
  – For VolumeCopy, both the primary and secondary logical drives are read-only during the copy. The secondary logical drive is read-only when the copy is stopped but the copy pair had not been deleted.
  – For remote mirroring, the secondary logical drive is always read-only, as long as the mirror is active.

Redistributing logical drives in case of failure

If you enabled autorecovery on the AIX host, you do not need to redistribute logical drives manually after a controller failover. However, if you have a heterogeneous environment, you might need to redistribute logical drives manually. Hosts that do not support some form of autorecovery, or AIX hosts that have autorecovery disabled, will not automatically redirect logical drives to the preferred paths.

Complete the following steps to manually redistribute logical drives to their paths:

1. Repair or replace any faulty components. For more information, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Installation and Support Guide* for the appropriate DS4000 storage server.
2. Using the Subsystem Management window, redistribute logical drives to their preferred paths by clicking **Advanced —> Recovery —> Redistribute Logical Drives**.

   Note: If a large number of LUNs is configured on the DS4000 system, redistributing logical drives might take 60 minutes or more to complete, depending on how busy the system is.
3. Run the **fget_config** command to verify the active paths, as shown in this example:

```
# fget_config -l dar0
dac0 ACTIVE dac1 ACTIVE
dac0-hdisk1
dac0-hdisk2
dac0-hdisk3
dac1-hdisk4
dac1-hdisk5
dac1-hdisk6
dac1-hdisk7
dac0-hdisk8
```

Chapter 3. Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems

This chapter provides the following information for HP-UX operating systems:

- "Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements"
- "Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 73
- "Configuring storage subsystems" on page 77
- "Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations" on page 84
- "Enabling multipath I/O with PV-links" on page 84
- "Redistributing logical drives in case of failure" on page 90

Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements

This section lists the the following requirements:

- Hardware and firmware requirements for the DS4000 configuration
- Hardware and software requirements for the HP-UX host system

Note: For the latest installation requirements and user information about Storage Manager, the HP-UX host operating system, and hardware components, see the readme file that is located in the HP-UX DS4000 Installation CD. The most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes this document, is maintained at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for HP-UX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for HP-UX.

DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements

Table 17 on page 70 lists the DS4000 Fibre Channel storage servers that you can use with DS4000 Storage Manager.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 17. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with HP-UX systems

Product Name	Model	Minimum appware/snapware (firmware) and NVSRAM versions
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server	1724-100	For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site: www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/ Click the link for your storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for HP-UX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for HP-UX.
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-90U	
IBM TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-1RU	
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Standard and Turbo Fibre Channel Storage Servers	1722-60U, 1722-60X	

Table 18 on page 71 lists the DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosures and other hardware that you can use with DS4000 Storage Manager.

Note: For important information about using the DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosure, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* (GC26-7601).

Table 18. Supported versions of hardware for HP-UX systems

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Storage Expansion Enclosures	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 SATA Storage Expansion Enclosure	1710-10U or 10X	9554 **Note:** When upgrading the EXP100 to ESM firmware version 9554, you must use a storage subsystem that has Storage Manager controller firmware **05.41.1x.xx** installed . You cannot upgrade to ESM firmware 9554 using a storage subsystem with different firmware installed.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-710	9627
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-1RU or 1RX	9326 **Note:** You must upgrade the EXP700 ESM firmware to version 9326 before you upgrade the Storage Manager controller firmware to version **06.1x.xx.xx**.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	3560-1RU or 1RX	9166
Host Bus Adapters	HP FC Adapter for HP-UX 11.0	A5158A, A6795A	B.11.00.10
	HP FC Adapter for HP-UX 11i	A5158A, A6795A	B.11.11.09
Switches	Brocade switch	2109-S08 2109-S16	2.6.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-F16	3.1.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-M12	4.0.2C
	Brocade switch	2109-F32	4.2.0C
	Brocade switch	2109-F08	3.1.2A
	McData switch	2032-064, 2032-140	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-016	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-216, 2031-224	6.01.00 - 18
	InRange switch	2042-001	4.3.0
	Cisco switch	2062-D01, 2062-D07, 2062-T07	1.3.4A

Note: If you have any questions about the latest DS4000 interoperability information, see the DS4000 interoperability matrix at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/interop-matrix.html

HP-UX system requirements

This section lists the minimum hardware and software requirements for an HP-UX host in a DS4300, DS4400, or DS4500 storage subsystem that is managed by DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12.

Hardware requirements

The HP-UX system must be an HP 9000/Series 800 server with:

- 440 MHz processor or faster
- 1 GB memory
- 0.7 MB available on /opt and root (or root-equivalent) privileges for installing SMutil and SMagent
- 47.5 MB available disk space on /opt and at least 95 MB available on /tmp for installation in an SMruntime environment

Software requirements

Ensure that the HP-UX host is running one of the following operating systems with the appropriate patches. Because patch levels can be superseded by more recent versions, refer to your operating system documentation or contact your operating system supplier to ensure that you have the correct patches.

- HP-UX 11.0 (64 bit) with the following patches:
  - PHKL_23939
  - PHKL-27003
  - PHKL_24027
  - PHKL_27364
  - To run HP-UX SDK for Java 2 Platform applications and applets using GUIs, you must also ensure that the HP C++ runtime libraries are installed on the HP-UX system; the latest version is available as patch PHSS_1658
- HP-UX 11.i (64 bit) with the following patches:
  - PHKL_26519
  - PHKL_26743
  - PHCO_27408, version 1.0
- For high-availability clusters of HP 9000/Series 800 computers, install the HP MC/Service Guard software package.

Ensure that the following maximum kernel parameters are configured, as shown in Table 19.

Table 19. HP-UX kernel parameter configuration requirements

Parameter	Description	Configuration
max_thread_proc 64	Maximum threads per process	1024
maxfiles	Soft-file limit per process	2048
maxuser	Influences other parameters	256 or greater
ncallout	Number of pending timeouts	4144

Installing DS4000 Storage Manager

You can install all of the DS4000 Storage Manager software packages automatically by using the InstallAnywhere wizard, or you can install each package manually. This section contains the following procedures:

- "Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard"
- "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 74 (original method)

Notes:

1. DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 (software package version 09.10.xx.xx) does not include an installation wizard. The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 software packages must be installed using the procedures described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 74.
2. Do not install the software packages in the same server by using both the installation wizard and the manual installation method.

Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard

The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 installation wizard installs the following software packages on the HP-UX host:

- SMruntime
- SMclient
- SMagent
- SMutil

Requirements: The DS4000 Storage Manager installation wizard requires a system with a graphics adapter card installed.

If your system does not have a graphics card installed — or if for any reason you do not want to use the wizard to install the software — skip this section, and install the stand-alone host software packages using the original installation procedure described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 74. The packages are included with the installation CD.

Complete the following steps to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software using the installation wizard.

1. Download the following file from the DS4000 Storage Manager CD, or from the DS4000 support Web site, to a directory on your system:

   SMIA-HPUX-09.12.xx.xx.bin
2. Open the file on your system. The Storage Manager Installation wizard's Introduction window opens.
3. Follow the instructions in each window of the wizard. When you select the installation type, you can choose one of the following options:
   - Typical (Full Installation) — Installs all Storage Manager software packages
   - Management Station — Installs SMruntime and SMclient
   - Host — Installs SMruntime, SMagent and SMutil
   - Custom — Allows you to select which packages you want to install
4. Restart the system.

Result: The DS4000 Storage Manager software is installed on your system.

Installing Storage Manager packages manually

Use the following procedures, in the order listed, to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software on an HP-UX storage management station or on an HP-UX host acting as a storage management station.

1. "Installing the client software"
2. "Installing the host software" on page 75

Installing the client software

Install the client software in the following order:

1. DS4000 SMruntime software
2. DS4000 SMclient software

Note: SMclient is dependent on SMruntime, which is a Java compiler for the SMclient and must be installed first. If you do not install SMruntime you receive errors during the software install analysis phase.

Prerequisites: Before installing the client software, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- This is the HP 9000-series server that you identified as the storage management station.
- This machine meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in "HP-UX system requirements" on page 72.
- Neither the SMruntime software nor the SMclient software is installed on the host and you are ready to install them on this machine.
- The DS4000 Storage Manager installation files are available in a directory on the system.

Steps for installing SMruntime software: Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the SMruntime installation process.

1. Insert the HP-UX installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
# mount -o cdcase -F cdfs /path_name /cdrom
# swinstall -s /cdrom/HP-UX/SMruntime_09xxxxx
```

where *path_name* is the directory path to the SMruntime package.

The Software Selection window opens and displays this message:

```
SMruntime
```

3. Select **SMruntime**.
4. Click **Actions —> Mark for installation**.
5. Click **Actions —> Install (Analysis)**.
6. Click **OK** when the analysis is finished.
7. In the confirmation window, click **Yes** to start the installation.
8. When the application is finished, click **Done** in the Installation window and close the application.

Note: You must exit the **swinstall** command before running the **swverify** command to verify the installation.

9. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# swverify -v SMruntime
```

   If no failure is reported, you are done installing SMruntime. If a failure is reported, follow the instructions in the /var/adm/sw/swagent.log file.

Result: The SMruntime installation of this HP-UX storage management station is complete.

Steps for installing SMclient software: Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the SMclient installation process.

1. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
# swinstall -s /cdrom/HP-UX/SMclient-HP-09xxxxx
```

   The Software Selection window opens and displays the following message:

```
SMclient
```

2. Select **SMclient**.
3. Click **Actions —> Mark for installation**.
4. Click **Actions —> Install (Analysis)**
5. Click **OK** when the analysis is finished.
6. In the Confirmation window, click **Yes** to start the installation.
7. When the application is finished, click **Done** in the Installation window and close the application.

   Note: You must exit the **swinstall** command before running the **swverify** command to verify installation.

8. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# swverify -v SMclient
```

   If no failure is reported, you are done installing SMclient. If a failure is reported, follow the instructions in the /var/adm/sw/swutil.log file.

Result: The SMclient installation of this HP-UX storage management station is complete.

Note: To ensure redundancy in a cluster environment, you must install SMclient on at least one additional storage management station or cluster server.

Installing the host software

If you are installing the optional SMagent, install the host software in the following order. If you are not installing SMagent, then SMutil is the only DS4000 Storage Manager host software that you need to install.

- DS4000 SMagent software (optional - for in-band management only)
- DS4000 SMutil software (required)

Note: SMagent and SMutil are dependent on SMruntime, which is a Java compiler for the DS4000 Storage Manager software and must be installed first. If you do not install SMruntime you receive errors during the software install analysis phase.

Prerequisites: Before installing the host software, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- This is the HP 9000-series server that you identified as the storage management station.
- This machine meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in "HP-UX system requirements" on page 72.
- SMruntime has been installed.

Note: SMagent is not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

Steps for installing SMagent software (optional): SMagent is required for in-band management only. It is not required for out-of-band management.

Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the SMagent installation process.

1. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
# swinstall -s /cdrom/HP-UX/SMagent-HP-09xxxxxx
```

   The Software Selection window opens and displays this message:

```
SMagent
```

2. Select **SMagent**.
3. From the toolbar, click **Actions —> Mark for installation**.
4. Click **Actions —> Install (analysis)**.
5. Click **OK** when the analysis is finished.
6. In the Confirmation window, click **Yes** to start the installation.
7. When the installation is finished, click **Done** in the Installation window and close the application.

   Note: You must exit the **swinstall** command before running the **swverify** command to verify the installation.
8. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# swverify -v SMagent
```

   If no failure is reported, you are done installing SMagent. If a failure is reported, follow the instructions in the /var/adm/sw/swagent.log file.

Result: The SMagent installation on this HP-UX storage management station is complete.

Steps for installing SMutil software (required): Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the SMutil installation process.

1. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
# swinstall -s /cdrom/HP-UX/SMutil_09xxxxxx
```

   The Software Selection window opens and displays this message:

```
SMutil
```

2. Select **SMutils**.
3. Click **Actions —> Mark for Installation**.
4. Click **Actions —> Install (Analysis)**.
5. Click **OK** when the analysis is finished.
6. In the Confirmation window, click **Yes** to start the installation.
7. When the application is finished, click **Done** in the Installation window and close the application.

   Note: You must exit the **swinstall** command before running the **swverify** command to verify the installation.
8. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# swverify -v SMutil
```

   If no failure is reported, you are done installing SMutil. If a failure is reported, follow the instructions in the /var/adm/sw/swutil.log file.

Result: The SMutil installation of this HP-UX storage management station is complete.

Configuring storage subsystems

After you install DS4000 Storage Manager, you need to configure the subsystem. System configuration includes configuring logical drives and creating storage arrays using the Subsystem Management window of DS4000 Storage Manager.

See “Configuring storage subsystems” on page 171 for additional information about storage configuration.

Before you begin: Note the following information:

- All DS4000 storage servers have an access logical drive set to LUN 31.

  Note: Do not delete the access LUN or the access logical drive.
- AVT/ADT is enabled by default; leave it in that state for HP-UX hosts.
- Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that come with this product might be later releases than those described in this document. To ensure that you have the latest versions of the firmware and the NVSRAM, read the readme file that is provided with the product. You can also find the latest readme file at the following Web site:

  www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

  Click the link for your storage server.

  When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for HP-UX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for HP-UX.

  The latest versions are listed in the readme file.

Note: If you do not have the latest versions of firmware and NVSRAM, download them and complete the procedure described in "Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM." If the version numbers are current, you can skip that procedure.

- If you have purchased a Storage Partitioning premium feature, ensure that the feature is enabled. See "Enabling your premium features" on page 26 for more information.

Complete the following procedures to configure DS4000 Storage Manager for an HP-UX system.

Adding storage subsystems to SMclient

Complete the following steps to add storage subsystems to SMclient:

1. To set up the storage subsystem for HP-UX, the subsystem must be physically configured, at least initially, for direct management through the Ethernet connections on each controller as well as through the Fibre Channel connection. Install the DS4000 Storage Manager software (SMruntime, SMclient, SMagent, and SMutil) before configuring the subsystem.
2. After the disk subsystem is configured on the network, type the following command to run SMclient on either the host server, if it is on the same network as the storage subsystem, or on another machine in the network that has the DS4000 Storage Manager software installed:

```
# SMclient
```

3. Complete the following steps to specify the IP addresses of the controllers:
   a. In the Enterprise Management window, click **Edit —> Add Storage Subsystem**.
   b. In the Add Storage Subsystem window, type the IP address of the first controller in the storage subsystem and click **Add**.
   c. Type the IP address of the second controller and click **Add**, and then click **Close**. The name of the storage subsystem displays in the Enterprise Management window.

      Note: Failure to add both controllers results in a partially-managed system.
4. In the Enterprise Management window, double-click the name of the storage subsystem to open its Subsystem Management window.
5. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** and review the summary portion of the output.

Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM

The procedures in this section describe how to download and install DS4000 controller firmware and NVSRAM.

Overview

Read the information in the following sections before you begin the download procedures:

- "Using concurrent download" on page 79
- "Using traditional or staged download" on page 79

Using concurrent download: Depending on your system's current firmware, you might be able to use *concurrent download*. Concurrent download is a method of downloading firmware to the controllers that does not require you to stop I/O to the controllers during the process.

Using traditional or staged download: There are two methods for downloading the firmware to the controllers:

- "Traditional download"
- "Staged download"

Traditional download: The traditional download process takes significantly longer and must be done in one phase, rather than in two phases as with the staged controller firmware download. Therefore the preferred method of controller firmware download is the staged controller firmware download.

Staged download: With staged firmware download, the download process occurs in two distinct phases: firmware transfer and firmware activation. You can perform the time-consuming task of loading the firmware online so that it is functionally transparent to the application. You can then defer the activation of the loaded firmware to a convenient time.

Some reasons for activating firmware files at a later time include the following:

- **Time of day** - Activating can take a long time, so you might want to wait until I/O loads are lighter because the controllers will go offline briefly to activate the new firmware.
- **Type of package** - You might want to test the new firmware package on one storage subsystem before activating it on other storage subsystems.
- **Multiple controllers** - You can download controller firmware from the storage management software to all storage subsystem controllers for later activation.

Notes:

1. You cannot use staged download to upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to version 6.1x.xx.xx. You can only use staged download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
2. Staged controller firmware download is not supported on DS4400 storage servers.

Important: Do not perform other storage management tasks, such as creating or deleting logical drives, reconstructing arrays, and so on, while downloading the DS4000 storage server controller firmware. It is recommended that you close all storage management sessions (except for the session that you use to upgrade the firmware) to the DS4000 storage server that you plan to update.

Preparing for firmware or NVSRAM download

To prepare for download, review and complete all of the steps in this section before you start the download procedures.

Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM: Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are provided with this product might be later releases than those described in this document.

To check the firmware and NVSRAM versions that are currently installed on your system, complete the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window displays.
2. In the Storage Subsystem Profile window, click the Controllers tab to view the current versions of firmware and NVSRAM.
3. Click **Close** to close the Storage Subsystem Profile window.
4. To find whether the versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are currently on your storage subsystem are the latest versions, see the readme file at the following Web site:

   www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

   Click the link for your storage server.

   When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for HP-UX and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for HP-UX.

   The latest versions are listed in the readme file.
5. If you find that you do not have the latest versions of the firmware and NVSRAM, click the **Back** button on your browser to return to the previous page. From there, you can download the correct versions to the host by clicking the appropriate link that is listed in the IBM DS4000 Controller Firmware matrix.

Save the storage subsystem configuration: Saving the storage subsystem configuration to a script file is necessary in order to restore the configuration in the event of a catastrophic failure.

Attention: Do not use this option if the storage subsystem is undergoing an operation that changes any configuration settings. (If any logical drive listed in the Logical View of the Subsystem Management window has a clock icon, then a configuration change is occurring, and you must wait to save the configuration.)

You can also save the storage subsystem profile, by selecting **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** in the Subsystem Management window.

Save the storage subsystem configuration by completing the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> Configuration —> Save**. The Save Configuration window displays.
2. In the Save Configuration window, select the elements of the configuration that you want to save, and click **Yes**. A save dialog displays.
3. In the save dialog, specify a name for the script file and select its location.

   Notes:

   - The .cfg extension is used by default for the script file if you do not specify a file extension.
   - Do not store your DS4000 Storage Server configuration script file in the same location as the logical drives that are defined on your DS4000 Storage Server. If you do, and the logical drives fail during the subsequent migration, you will lose data.
4. Click **Save**. The Configuration Saved window displays.
5. Review the information in the Configuration Saved window, then click **OK** to return to the Subsystem Management window.

Determine whether you need to stop I/O: If you do not have the correct firmware levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.

Ensure that concurrent download is supported with your system's current firmware versions, using the information that is listed in Table 20.

Table 20. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (HP-UX)

DS4000 storage server:	Storage Manager controller firmware version:
DS4300:	05.40.07.xx
DS4400/DS4500:	05.40.06.xx
All other DS4000 storage servers:	05.30.xx.xx, 05.40.xx.xx, 06.1x.xx.xx

Attention: You cannot upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx using concurrent download. For example:

- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 5.4x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 5.4x.xx.xx firmware.

Steps for upgrading the controller firmware

Complete the following steps to install a new firmware version on the controllers:

1. Download the correct version of the firmware from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 79. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware versions to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the firmware, using the information that is listed in Table 20.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller Firmware**. The Download Firmware window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the firmware file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. If you want to perform a staged firmware download, select the check box next to ″Transfer files but don't activate them (activate later).″ If you want to perform a traditional firmware download, do not select the check box, and the firmware will load immediately.
7. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
8. Click **Yes** to start the download.
9. Close the Subsystem Management window and then reopen it to complete the firmware update.
10. Type the following command to restart the host:

```
# reboot
```

11. Verify that the firmware was successfully installed.

Steps for upgrading the NVSRAM

Complete the following steps to install a new version of NVSRAM on the controllers. NVSRAM will be activated immediately.

1. Download the correct NVSRAM version from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 79. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware versions to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the NVSRAM, using the information that is listed in Table 20 on page 81.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the NVSRAM.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller NVSRAM**. The Download NVSRAM window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the NVSRAM file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
7. Click **Yes** to start the download.
8. Verify that the NVSRAM was successfully installed.

Storage Partitioning: Defining an HP-UX host group

A *host group* is an entity in the Storage Partitioning topology that defines a logical collection of host computers that require shared access to one or more logical drives. You can grant individual hosts in a defined host group access to storage partitions, independently of the host group. You can make logical drive-to-LUN mappings to the host group or to an individual host in a host group.

Notes:

1. Create the HP-UX host group at the storage subsystem level. Do not create host groups at the default group level.

   Exception: If you are running a DS4300 configuration without partitioning enabled, you can use the default host group.
2. In a cluster partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host group level so that all the hosts can see the same storage. In a normal partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host level.

For more information about Storage Partitioning, see "Storage Partitioning premium feature" on page 24.

Before you begin: Identify the worldwide port name for each of your HBAs. Look for the worldwide port name for the HBA and write down the number for future reference. Use the following command to find your HBAs listed in the dev directory as `td0`, `td1`, and so on, where *X* in the following example represents the td number.

```
#cd /dev/td
#tdutil /dev/tdX
```

Steps for defining a host group

Complete the following steps to create an HP-UX host group:

1. Click the **Mappings View** tab on the Subsystem Management window.

2. In the Topology section, highlight the storage subsystem and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host Group**.

   Note: Make sure that the storage subsystem is highlighted in the left panel of the Subsystem Management window. Do not click on Undefined Mappings.
3. Type the name of the new host group (for example, HP-UX). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
4. Select the new host group and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host**.
5. Define the new host. Type the name of the HP-UX host to which the storage subsystem is attached.
   a. Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
   b. Highlight the host that you just added, then right-click and select **Define Host Port**.

      Note: You might be required to restart the host if you cannot see the WWPN for your HBAs. Restarting causes the system to log into the switch. If the restart does not work, manually enter the WWPNs when prompted.
   c. Type or select the desired host port for the first HBA, and then change the host type to **HP-UX**. Click **Add**.

      Note: Failure to change the host type from the default to HP-UX causes undesired results. Also, if you use two HBAs you must define two host ports. Failure to do so causes undesired results.
   d. Choose the host port for the second HBA and click **Add**, and then click **Close**.

Mapping LUNs to a storage partition

Before you begin: Read “DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning” on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

Note: HP-UX operating systems do not currently support 256 LUNs per partition.

- HP-UX 11.10 supports up to 32 LUNs per partition.
- HP-UX 11.i supports up to 128 LUNs per partition.

Complete the following steps to map LUNs to a storage partition:

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Additional Mappings**. The Define Additional Mappings window opens.
3. In the Define Additional Mappings window, select the following options, and then click **Add**:
   - Host group or host
   - Logical unit number (LUN)
   - The logical drive that you want to map

   Note: It is recommended that you do not map at the host group level. If you do, every host can see all the LUNs.

Repeat these steps for each LUN that you want to map to the partition.

Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations

DS4000 Storage Manager supports IBM DS4000 Fibre Channel Storage Servers in direct-attached HP-UX configurations or in a SAN environment through switches in HP-UX configurations.

Creating a direct-attached configuration

To create a direct-attached configuration, you must ensure that:

- One or two HP-UX servers can be connected to DS4000 storage servers.
- Two server DS4400 or DS4500 configurations require four host-side minihubs, each with exactly one Fibre Channel connection from each HBA to a minihub.

  Note: DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not have minihubs.
- There are two or four HBAs (HP A6795A or HP A5158A) per DS4000 storage server. Each pair must be configured to one DS4000 partition.
- No external hubs are being used.

Complete the following steps to set up a direct-attached configuration:

1. Connect the HBAs to each controller or minihub port of the DS4000 storage server.
2. Configure and verify the configuration.

Creating a SAN-attached configuration

To create a SAN-attached configuration, you must ensure that:

- Multiple Fibre Channel HBAs within the same server cannot “see” the same DS4000 controller port.
- The IBM Fibre Channel HBAs are isolated from each other if they are connected to the same switch that is connected to the same DS4000 controller port.
- Each Fibre Channel HBA and controller port must be in its own fabric zone, if they are connecting through a single Fibre Channel switch, such as a 2109-F16.

  Multiple DS4000 devices can be configured to the same set of Fibre Channel HBAs through a Fibre Channel switch.

Complete the following steps to set up a SAN-attached configuration:

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

1. Connect the HBAs to the switch or switches.
2. Connect the DS4000 storage subsystems to the switch or switches.
3. Set the required zones on the Fibre Channel switch or switches, if applicable.
4. Configure and verify the configuration.

Enabling multipath I/O with PV-links

If the HP-UX system is attached with two host bus adapters to the DS4000 storage server, you can establish redundant access to storage by using physical volume links (PV-links), a feature of the HP-UX operating system. PV-links achieve access redundancy by using devices with both primary and secondary paths to the same device.

Important:

- There are two methods for establishing redundant access to storage using PV-links:
  - If you have Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1.xx.xx or 5.xx.xx.xx installed, use method 1.
  - If you have Storage Manager controller firmware firmware version 4.xx.xx.xx installed, use method 2.
- For both methods, you must have SMutil installed on the host.

Using PV-links: Method 1

If you have Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1.xx.xx or 5.xx.xx.xx installed, use the following procedure to enable multipath I/O by using PV-links:

1. Run the **hot_add** command from HP-UX at the shell prompt. This command updates any new devices that are created or added. A dump is generated. When the **hot_add** command runs, each new logical drive that is created in the Subsystem Management window represents a disk device to the operating system.

```
#hot_add
```

2. Run the **SMdevices** command. The system provides a dump similar to the example in Figure 11 on page 86. Notice that every logical drive and logical drive access unit has been assigned a logical unit number (LUN). Each logical drive has two paths. Each RAID controller has one logical drive access. For example, a subsystem that contains two RAID controllers has two logical drive accesses.

```
#SMdevices
```

```
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Accounting, LUN 0,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>,
Preferred Path (Controller-B): In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d1 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive HR, LUN 1,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000273eaeae30>,
Alternate Path (Controller-B): Not In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d2 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Finance,
LUN 2, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000253eaeadf8>,
Alternate Path (Controller-B): Not In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d3 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Purchasing,
LUN 3, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000243eaeadbe>,
Alternate Path (Controller-B): Not In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d4 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Development,
LUN 4, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001d3eaeacef>,
Preferred Path (Controller-B): In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c166t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001b00000000>]

/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Accounting, LUN 0,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>,
Alternate Path (Controller-A): Not In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d1 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, logical Drive HR, LUN 1,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000273eaeae30>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d2 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Finance, LUN 2,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000253eaeadf8>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d3 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Purchasing, LUN 3,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000243eaeadbe>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d4 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Development, LUN 4,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001d3eaeacef>,
Alternate Path (Controller-A): Not In Use]
/dev/rdsk/c172t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c0000002200000000>]
```

Figure 11. Sample SMdevices command output (method 1)

Note: If you do not see the logical drives and logical drive accesses after running the **hot_add** and **SMdevices** commands, restart the HP-UX host by running the **reboot** command.

```
#reboot
```

3. Determine the preferred and alternate path for each logical drive by examining the output from the **SMdevices** command, as shown in the example in Figure 11. Notice that each device is listed twice; one instance is the preferred path and one instance is the alternate path.

   Preferred path

   In the sample output that is shown in Figure 11, the preferred path is **/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0**:

```
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive
Accounting, LUN 0, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>,
Preferred Path (Controller-B):   In Use]
```

   Alternate path

   In the sample output that is shown in Figure 11, the alternate path is **/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0**:

```
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive
Accounting, LUN 0, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>,
Alternate Path (Controller-A):   NotIn Use]
```

Using PV-links: Method 2

If you have Storage Manager controller firmware version 4.xx.xx.xx installed, use the following procedures to enable multipath I/O by using PV-links:

- Determine the preferred and alternate paths
- Create the logical drives and logical drive groups

Determining preferred and alternate paths

Complete the following steps to determine the preferred and alternate paths.

1. Run the **hot_add** command from HP-UX at the shell prompt. This command updates any new devices that are created or added. A dump is generated. When the **hot_add** command runs, each new logical drive that is created in the Subsystem Management window represents a disk device to the operating system.

```
#hot_add
```

2. Run the **SMdevices** command. The system provides a dump similar to the example in Figure 12. Notice that every logical drive and logical drive access unit has been assigned a logical unit number (LUN). Each logical drive has two paths. Each RAID controller has one logical drive access. For example, a subsystem that contains two RAID controllers has two logical drive accesses.

```
#SMdevices
```

```
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Accounting, LUN 0,
 Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d1 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive HR, LUN 1,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000273eaeae30>]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d2 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Finance, LUN 2,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000253eaeadf8>]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d3 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Purchasing, LUN 3,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000243eaeadbe>]
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d4 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Development, LUN 4,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001d3eaeacef>]
/dev/rdsk/c166t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001b00000000>]

/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Accounting, LUN 0,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d1 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, logical Drive HR, LUN 1,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000273eaeae30>]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d2 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Finance, LUN 2,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000253eaeadf8>]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d3 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Purchasing, LUN 3,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c000000243eaeadbe>]
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d4 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Development, LUN 4,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001d3eaeacef>]
/dev/rdsk/c172t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c0000002200000000>]
```

Figure 12. Sample SMdevices command output (method 2)

Note: If you do not see the logical drives and logical drive accesses after running the **hot_add** and **SMdevices** commands, restart the HP-UX host by running the **reboot** command.

```
#reboot
```

3. Determine the preferred and alternate path for each logical drive by examining the output from the **SMdevices** command, as shown in the example in Figure 12 on page 87.

   Notice that each device is listed twice; one instance is the preferred path and one instance is the alternate path. Also, notice that each device has a worldwide name (WWN). Part of the WWN of each logical drive is unique for each controller in the DS4000 storage server. If you examine the WWNs for the logical drive access in Figure 12 on page 87, you notice that they differ in only five digits, f56d0 and f5d6c.

   The devices in Figure 12 on page 87 are viewed through the controllers c166 and c172. To determine the preferred path of a specific logical drive seen by the operating system perform the following steps:

   a. Find the WWN for each logical drive access. In this case, Logical Drive Access 1 is associated with **c166** and has the WWN of **f56d0**.

```
/dev/rdsk/c166t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001b00000000>]
```

   Logical Drive Access 2 is associated with **c172** and has the WWN of **f5d6c**:

```
/dev/rdsk/c172t3d7 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive Access, LUN 31,
Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f5d6c0000002200000000>]
```

   b. Identify the preferred device path name for the attached storage device by matching the logical drive WWN to a logical drive access WWN. In this case, the WWN for **LUN 0** is associated with controller **c166** and **c172**. Therefore, the preferred path for **LUN 0** is **/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0**, which is controller **c166**:

```
/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive
Accounting, LUN 0, Logical Drive g<600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>]
```

   The alternate path is **/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0**, which is controller **c172**:

```
/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0 [Storage Subsystem DS4000, Logical Drive
Accounting, LUN 0, Logical Drive WWN <600a0b80000f56d00000001e3eaead2b>]
```

   c. To keep a record for future reference, enter this path information for LUN 0 into a matrix (similar to the one in Table 21).

Table 21. Sample record of logical drive preferred and alternate paths

LUN	Logical drive name	Preferred path	Alternate path
0	Accounting	/dev/rdsk/c166t0d0	/dev/rdsk/c172t0d0
1	HR	/dev/rdsk/c172t0d1	/dev/rdsk/c166t0d1
2	Finance	dev/rdsk/c172t0d2	/dev/rdsk/c166t0d2
3	Purchasing	/dev/rdsk/c172t0d3	/dev/rdsk/c166t0d3
4	Development	/dev/rdsk/c166t0d4	/dev/rdsk/c172t0d4

d. Repeat step 3a on page 88 through step 3c on page 88 for each logical drive that is seen by the operating system.

Continue to the next procedure.

Creating volumes and volume groups

After you have determined the preferred and alternate paths, and have recorded them in a matrix for future reference, perform the following steps to create volumes and volume groups.

Recommendation: Do not use SAM for DS4000 storage configuration. If you do, you might get unexpected results.

Note: The steps in this procedure refer to LUN 0 in Table 21 on page 88.

1. Create a physical volume and define the primary paths for the attached storage devices. The primary path will be the preferred path. Type the following command at the shell prompt:

```
#pvcreate /dev/rdsk/c166t0d0
```

   The system confirms the creation of the new physical volume.

2. Create volume groups.

   Note: For more information on how to create volume groups, refer to HP-UX documentation or to man pages.

   a. Make a directory for volume group by typing the following commands. This directory must reside in the /dev directory.

```
#cd /dev
#mkdir /vg1
```

   b. Create the group special file in the /dev directory for the volume group by typing the following command:

```
#mknod /dev/vg1/group c 64 0x010000
```

   c. Create a volume group and define physical volume names (primary link) for the attached storage device by typing the following command:

```
#vgcreate /dev/vg1/ /dev/dsk/c166t0d0
```

   d. Define the secondary path name (alternate path) for the attached-storage device by typing the following command:

```
#vgextend vg1 /dev/dsk/c172t0d0
```

   Note: You can also use the **vgextend** command to add additional storage devices to an existing volume group. Add the primary path first, then add the alternate path, as shown in the following example:

   1) Add the primary path for LUN1.

```
#vgextend vg1 /dev/dsk/c172t0d1
```

2) Add the secondary path for LUN1.

```
#vgextend vg1 /dev/dsk/c166t0d1
```

3. Create logical volumes. For more information, refer to HP-UX documentation.
4. Create file systems for the logical volumes.
5. Repeat step 1 on page 89 through step 4 to create additional volume groups. For more information, refer to HP-UX documentation.
6. Verify the primary (preferred) and secondary (alternate) paths for each device by typing the following command:

```
#vgdisplay -v vgname
```

where *vgname* is the volume group name.

Redistributing logical drives in case of failure

Auto Volume Transfer (AVT) is enabled, by default, on HP-UX hosts. If a failure occurs that initiates a controller failover, AVT redirects I/O to the available controller. AVT does not require manual redistribution.

Important: If you have a heterogeneous environment, you must redistribute logical drives manually. Failure to do so will leave the subsystem in a *Needs Attention* state, because hosts that do not support AVT or have AVT disabled will not automatically redirect I/O to the preferred controller. If a failure occurs that initiates a controller failover, perform the following steps to redistribute logical drives to their paths:

1. Repair or replace any faulty components. For more information, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Installation and Support Guide* for the appropriate DS4000 storage server.
2. Using the Subsystem Management window, redistribute logical drives to their preferred paths by clicking **Advanced —> Recovery —> Redistribute Logical Drives**.

Chapter 4. Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems

This chapter provides the following information for Solaris operating systems:

- "Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements"
- "Installing DS4000 Storage Manager" on page 95
- "Configuring storage subsystems" on page 100
- "Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations" on page 106
- "Configuring the host bus adapter cards" on page 107
- "Installing a failover driver on Solaris" on page 117
- "Verifying external storage" on page 130
- "Redistributing logical drives in case of failure" on page 130

Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements

This section lists the the following requirements:

- Hardware and firmware requirements for the DS4000 configuration
- Hardware and software requirements for the Solaris host system

Note: For the latest installation requirements and user information about Storage Manager, the Solaris host operating system, and hardware components, see the readme file that is located in the Solaris DS4000 Installation CD. The most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes this document, is maintained at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.

DS4000 hardware and firmware requirements

Table 22 on page 92 lists the DS4000 Fibre Channel storage servers that you can use with DS4000 Storage Manager.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 22. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with Solaris systems

Product name	Model	Minimum appware/snapware (firmware) and NVSRAM versions
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server	1724-100	For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site: www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/ Click the link for your storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-90U	
IBM TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-1RU	
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Standard and Turbo Fibre Channel Storage Servers	1722-60U, 1722-60X	

Table 23 on page 93 lists the DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosures and other hardware that you can use with DS4000 Storage Manager.

Note: For important information about using the DS4000 EXP100 SATA Storage Expansion Enclosures, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* (GC26-7601).

Table 23. Hardware you can use with Solaris systems

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Storage Expansion Enclosure	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 SATA Storage Expansion Enclosure	1710-10U or 10X	9554 **Note:** When upgrading the EXP100 to ESM firmware version 9554, you must use a storage subsystem that has Storage Manager controller firmware **05.41.1x.xx** installed . You cannot upgrade to ESM firmware 9554 using a storage subsystem with different firmware installed.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-710	9627
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-1RU or 1RX	9326 **Note:** You must upgrade the EXP700 ESM firmware to version 9326 before you upgrade the Storage Manager controller firmware to version **06.1x.xx.xx**.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	3560-1RU or 1RX	9166
	JNI FC Adapter	FCE-1473 S-bus 64 bit	5.2.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCE-6410-N 33 Mhz	4.1.1.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCE-6460-PCI 64 bit	5.2.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCE2-6412 66 Mhz 64 bit	4.1.1.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCC-6562	5.2.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCC2-6562	5.2.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCX-6562	5.2.3
	JNI FC Adapter	FCC\X2-6562	5.2.3
	QLogic Adapter	4.08	2.00.01

Table 23. Hardware you can use with Solaris systems (continued)

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Switches	Brocade switch	2109-S08, 2109-S16	2.6.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-F16	3.1.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-F8	3.1.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-M12	4.0.2C
	Brocade switch	2109-F32	4.2.0C
	McData switch	2032-064, 2032-140	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-016	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-216, 2031-224	6.01.00 - 18
	InRange switch	2042-001	4.3.0
	Cisco switch	2062-D01, 2062-D07, 2062-T07	1.3.4A

Note: If you have any questions about the latest DS4000 interoperability information, see the DS4000 interoperability matrix at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/interop-matrix.html

Solaris system requirements

This section lists the minimum hardware and software requirements for a Solaris host in a DS4300, DS4400, or DS4500 storage subsystem that is managed by DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12.

Hardware requirements

The Solaris system must be a Sparc S20 processor with:

- 1 GB system memory
- CD-ROM drive
- Mouse or similar pointing device
- Ethernet network interface card
- 1 MB available on /opt and root (or root-equivalent) privileges for installing RDAC

Software requirements

Ensure that the Solaris host is running one of the following operating systems with the appropriate patches. The patches listed in this document can be superseded by more recent versions, so see your Solaris operating system documentation or contact your operating system supplier to ensure that you have the correct patches.

- Solaris 7 with the following patches (minimum versions):
  - 106541–25
  - 108376–42
  - 107544–03
- Solaris 8 with the following patches (minimum versions):
  - 108528–18

  - 111293–04
  - 111310–01
  - 111111–03
  - 108987–12
- Solaris 9 with the following patches (minimum versions):
  - 113454-14
- For high-availability clusters of Sparc S20 systems, install the VERITAS Cluster Server software package. Check the VERITAS Cluster Server (VCS) documentation for the latest patches.

Installing DS4000 Storage Manager

You can install all of the DS4000 Storage Manager software packages automatically by using the InstallAnywhere wizard, or you can install each package manually. This section contains the following procedures:

- "Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard"
- "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 96 (original method)

Notes:

1. DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 (software package version 09.10.xx.xx) does not include an installation wizard. The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.10 software packages must be installed using the procedures described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 96.
2. Do not install the software packages in the same server by using both the installation wizard and the manual installation method.

Installing Storage Manager using the installation wizard

The DS4000 Storage Manager 9.12 installation wizard installs the following software packages on the HP-UX host:

- SMruntime
- SMclient
- SMagent
- SMutil

Requirements: The DS4000 Storage Manager installation wizard requires a system with a graphics adapter card installed.

If your system does not have a graphics card installed — or if for any reason you do not want to use the wizard to install the software — skip this section, and install the stand-alone host software packages using the original installation procedure described in "Installing Storage Manager packages manually" on page 74. The packages are included with the installation CD.

Complete the following steps to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software using the installation wizard.

1. Download the following file from the DS4000 Storage Manager CD, or from the DS4000 support Web site, to a directory on your system:

   SMIA-SOL-09.12.xx.xx.bin
2. Open the file on your system. The Storage Manager Installation wizard's Introduction window opens.

3. Follow the instructions in each window of the wizard. When you select the installation type, you can choose one of the following options:
   - Typical (Full Installation) — Installs all Storage Manager software packages
   - Management Station — Installs SMruntime and SMclient
   - Host — Installs SMruntime, SMagent and SMutil
   - Custom — Allows you to select which packages you want to install
4. Restart the system.

Result: The DS4000 Storage Manager software is installed on your system.

Installing Storage Manager packages manually

Use the following procedures, in the order listed, to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software on a Solaris storage management station.

1. "Installing the client software"
2. "Installing the host software" on page 98

Installing the client software

Install the client software in the following order:

1. DS4000 SMruntime software
2. DS4000 SMclient software

Note: The SMclient is dependent on SMruntime, which is a Java compiler for the SMclient and must be installed first.

Prerequisites: Before installing the client software, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- This is the SUN SPARCstation workstation that you have identified as the storage management station.
- This machine is running Solaris 8 or Solaris 9, and meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in "Solaris system requirements" on page 94.
- Neither DS4000 SMruntime software nor DS4000 SMclient software is installed on the host, and you are ready to install them on this machine.
- The DS4000 Storage Manager installation files are available in a directory on the system.

Steps for installing SMruntime software: Modify these commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the client installation process.

Before you begin: Visit the Web site that is listed in "Hardware, firmware, and host system requirements" on page 91 to ensure you have the most recent version of the software.

1. Insert the Solaris installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
pkgadd -d path/filename.pkg
```

where *path/filename* is the directory path and name of the package that you want to install. Information about packages that can be installed in the specified directory is displayed on the command line. The following is an example of what you might see displayed.

```
The following packages are available:
1 SMruntime
IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Runtime (sparc)
version numberSelect package(s) you wish  to process (or 'all'
to process all Packages).  (default:all)   [?,??,q]:
```

3. Press **Enter** to select the default (all). The installation process begins. The following prompt is displayed:

```
This package contains scripts which will be executed with super-user
Permission during the process of installing this package.
Do you want to continue with the installation of <SMruntime>
[y, n, ?]
```

4. Type y and press **Enter**. The installation process continues. When the SMruntime software has been successfully installed, the following message is displayed:

```
Installation of <SMruntime> was successful.
```

5. Type the following command to verify that the installation is successful:

```
# pkginfo -l SMruntime
```

   The installation is successful if the following message displays:

```
INSTDATE: date/time
STATUS: completely installed
```

   where *date/time* is today's installation date and time.

Steps for installing SMclient software: Use the following procedure to install and integrate the client software on a Solaris storage management station.

Modify these commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the client installation process.

1. Insert the Solaris installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the installation process by typing the following command:

```
# pkgadd -d path/filename.pkg
```

   where *path/filename* is the directory path and name of the package that you want to install.

   Information about packages that can be installed in the specified directory is displayed on the command line. The following is an example of what you might see displayed.

```
The following packages are available:

1 SMclient                   IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Client
                              (sparc) version number

Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all' to process all
packages). (default:all)  [?,??,q]:
```

3. Press **Enter** to select the default (all).

The installation process begins. The following prompt is displayed:

```
This package contains scripts which will be executed with super-user
permission during the process of installing this package.

Do you want to continue with the installation of <SMclient>

[y, n, ?]
```

4. Type y and press **Enter**.

   The installation process continues. When the SMclient software has been successfully installed, the following message is displayed:

```
Installation of <SMclient> was successful.
```

5. Type the following command to verify that the installation is successful:

```
# pkginfo -l SMclient
```

   The installation is successful if the following message displays:

```
INSTDATE: date/time
STATUS: completely installed
```

   where *date/time* is today's installation date and time.

Result: The client software installation on this Solaris storage management station is complete. Remove the installation CD from the CD-ROM drive.

Note: To ensure redundancy in a cluster environment, you must install the client software on at least one additional storage management station or cluster server. To install the client software on additional storage management stations, repeat the installation procedure. Use the corresponding installation profile for each storage management station as a guide.

Installing the host software

If you are installing the optional SMagent, install the host software in the following order. If you are not installing SMagent, then SMutil is the only DS4000 Storage Manager host software that you need to install.

- DS4000 SMagent software (optional - for in-band management only)
- DS4000 SMutil software (required)

Prerequisites: Before installing the host software, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- This is the Sun SPARCstation workstation that you have identified as the storage management station.
- This machine is running Solaris 8 or Solaris 9, and meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in "Solaris system requirements" on page 94.
- The SMagent, SMutil, and RDAC software packages are not installed, and you are ready to install them on this machine.

Note: SMagent is not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

Steps for installing SMagent software (optional): SMagent is required for in-band management only. It is not required for out-of-band management.

Complete the following steps to install SMagent:

1. Type the following command to start installing the SMagent package:

```
pkgadd -d path/filename.pkg
```

   where *path/filename* is the directory path and name of the package that you want to install.

   The installation process begins.

   Information about packages that can be installed in the specified directory is displayed on the command line. The following is an example of what you might see displayed.

```
The following packages are available:

1 SMagent                     IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Agent
                              (sparc) version number

Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all' to process all
packages). (default:all)  [?,??,q]:
```

2. Press **Enter** to select the default (all).

   The installation process begins. The following prompt is displayed:

```
This package contains scripts which will be executed with super-user
Permission during the process of installing this package.
Do you want to continue with the installation of <SMagent>
[y n, ?]
```

3. Type y and press **Enter**.

   The installation process continues. When the SMagent software has been successfully installed, the following message is displayed:

```
Installation of <SMagent> was successful.
```

4. Type the following command to verify that the installation is successful:

```
# pkginfo -l SMagent
```

   The installation is successful if the following message displays:

```
INSTDATE: date/time
STATUS: completely installed
```

   where *date/time* is today's installation date and time.

5. Remove the installation CD from the CD-ROM drive.

Steps for installing SMutil software (required): Complete the following steps to install SMutil:

1. Type the following command to start installing the SMutil package:

```
pkgadd -d path/filename.pkg
```

   where *path/filename* is the directory path and name of the package that you want to install.

   The installation process begins.

   When the SMutil has been successfully installed, the following message is displayed:

```
Installation of <SMutil> was successful.
```

2. Type the following command to verify that the installation is successful:

```
# pkginfo -l SMutil
```

The installation is successful if the following message displays:

```
INSTDATE: date/time
STATUS: completely installed
```

where *date/time* is today's installation date and time.

Result: You have finished installing the host software on this Solaris host.

Configuring storage subsystems

To configure DS4000 Storage Manager for a Solaris system, complete the following procedures in the order that they are described in this section:

- Add storage subsystems to DS4000 SMclient
- Update NVSRAM and DS4000 firmware (if necessary)

Before you begin: Read the following information:

- All DS4000 storage servers have an access logical drive set to LUN 31.

  Note: Do not delete the access LUN or the access logical drive.
- If you have purchased a Storage Partitioning premium feature, ensure that the feature is enabled. See "Enabling your premium features" on page 26 for more information.
- Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are provided with this product might be later releases than those described in this document. To ensure that you have the latest versions of the firmware and the NVSRAM, read the readme file that is provided with the product. You can also find the latest readme file at the Web site that is appropriate for your DS4000 storage server:

  www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

  Click the link for your storage server.

  When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.

  The latest versions are listed in the readme file.

  Note: If you do not have the latest versions of firmware and NVSRAM, download them and complete the procedure described in "Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM" on page 101. If the version numbers are current, you can skip that procedure.

Adding storage subsystems to SMclient

Complete the following steps to specify the IP addresses of the controllers:

1. In the Enterprise Management window, click **Edit —> Add Storage Subsystem**.

2. In the Add Storage Subsystem window, type the IP address of the first controller in the storage subsystem and click **Add**.
3. Type the IP address of the second controller and click **Add**, and then click **Close**. The name of the storage subsystem displays in the Enterprise Management window.
4. Double-click the name of the storage subsystem to open its Subsystem Management window.

Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM

The procedures in this section describe how to download and install DS4000 controller firmware and NVSRAM.

Overview

Read the information in the following sections before you begin the download procedures:

- "Using concurrent download"
- "Using traditional or staged download"

Using concurrent download: Depending on your system's current firmware version, you might be able to use *concurrent download*. Concurrent download is a method of downloading firmware to the controllers that does not require you to stop I/O to the controllers during the process.

Using traditional or staged download: There are two methods for downloading the firmware to the controllers:

- "Traditional download"
- "Staged download"

Traditional download: The traditional download process takes significantly longer and must be done in one phase, rather than in two phases as with the staged controller firmware download. Therefore the preferred method of controller firmware download is the staged controller firmware download.

Staged download: With staged firmware download, the download process occurs in two distinct phases: firmware transfer and firmware activation. You can perform the time-consuming task of loading the firmware online so that it is functionally transparent to the application. You can then defer the activation of the loaded firmware to a convenient time.

Some reasons for activating firmware files at a later time include the following:

- **Time of day** - Activating can take a long time, so you might want to wait until I/O loads are lighter because the controllers will go offline briefly to activate the new firmware.
- **Type of package** - You might want to test the new firmware package on one storage subsystem before activating it on other storage subsystems.
- **Multiple controllers** - You can download controller firmware from the storage management software to all storage subsystem controllers for later activation.

Notes:

1. You cannot use staged download to upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to version 6.1x.xx.xx. You can only use staged download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.

2. Staged controller firmware download is not supported on DS4400 storage servers.

Important: Do not perform other storage management tasks, such as creating or deleting logical drives, reconstructing arrays, and so on, while downloading the DS4000 storage server controller firmware. It is recommended that you close all storage management sessions (except for the session that you use to upgrade the firmware) to the DS4000 storage server that you plan to update.

Preparing for firmware or NVSRAM download

To prepare for download, review and complete all of the steps in this section before you start the download procedures.

Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM: Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are provided with this product might be later releases than those described in this document.

To check the firmware and NVSRAM versions that are currently installed on your system, complete the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window displays.
2. In the Storage Subsystem Profile window, click the Controllers tab to view the current versions of firmware and NVSRAM.
3. Click **Close** to close the Storage Subsystem Profile window.
4. To find whether the versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are currently on your storage subsystem are the latest versions, see the readme file at the following Web site:

   www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

   Click the link for your storage server.

   When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.

   The latest versions are listed in the readme file.
5. If you find that you do not have the latest versions of the firmware and NVSRAM, click the **Back** button on your browser to return to the previous page. From there, you can download the correct versions to the host by clicking the appropriate link that is listed in the IBM DS4000 Controller Firmware matrix.

Save the storage subsystem configuration: Saving the storage subsystem configuration to a script file is necessary in order to restore the configuration in the event of a catastrophic failure.

Attention: Do not use this option if the storage subsystem is undergoing an operation that changes any configuration settings. (If any logical drive listed in the Logical View of the Subsystem Management window has a clock icon, then a configuration change is occurring, and you must wait to save the configuration.)

You can also save the storage subsystem profile, by selecting **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** in the Subsystem Management window.

Save the storage subsystem configuration by completing the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> Configuration —> Save**. The Save Configuration window displays.
2. In the Save Configuration window, select the elements of the configuration that you want to save, and click **Yes**. A save dialog displays.
3. In the save dialog, specify a name for the script file and select its location.

   Notes:

   - The .cfg extension is used by default for the script file if you do not specify a file extension.
   - Do not store your DS4000 Storage Server configuration script file in the same location as the logical drives that are defined on your DS4000 Storage Server. If you do, and the logical drives fail during the subsequent migration, you will lose data.
4. Click **Save**. The Configuration Saved window displays.
5. Review the information in the Configuration Saved window, then click **OK** to return to the Subsystem Management window.

Determine whether you need to stop I/O: If you do not have the correct firmware levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.

Ensure that concurrent download is supported with your system's current firmware versions, using the information that is listed in Table 24.

Table 24. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (Solaris)

DS4000 storage server:	Storage Manager controller firmware version:
DS4300:	05.40.07.xx
DS4400/DS4500:	05.40.06.xx
All other DS4000 storage servers:	05.30.xx.xx, 05.40.xx.xx, 06.1x.xx.xx

Attention: You cannot upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx using concurrent download. For example:

- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 5.4x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 5.4x.xx.xx firmware.

Steps for upgrading the controller firmware

Complete the following steps to install a new firmware version on the controllers:

1. Download the correct version of the firmware from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 102. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware versions to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the controller firmware, using the information that is listed in Table 24.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the controller firmware.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.

4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller Firmware**. The Download Firmware window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the firmware file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. If you want to perform a staged firmware download, select the check box next to ″Transfer files but don't activate them (activate later).″ If you want to perform a traditional firmware download, do not select the check box, and the firmware will load immediately.
7. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
8. Click **Yes** to start the download.
9. Close the Subsystem Management window and then reopen it to complete the firmware update.
10. Verify that the firmware was successfully installed.

Steps for upgrading the NVSRAM

Complete the following steps to install a new version of NVSRAM on the controllers. NVSRAM will be activated immediately.

1. Download the correct NVSRAM version from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 102. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware and device driver levels to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the NVSRAM, using the information that is listed in Table 24 on page 103.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the NVSRAM.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller NVSRAM**. The Download NVSRAM window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the NVSRAM file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
7. Click **Yes** to start the download.
8. Verify that the NVSRAM was successfully installed.

Storage Partitioning: Defining a Solaris host group

A *host group* is an entity in the Storage Partitioning topology that defines a logical collection of host computers that require shared access to one or more logical drives. You can grant individual hosts in a defined host group access to storage partitions, independently of the host group. You can make logical drive-to-LUN mappings to the host group or to an individual host in a host group.

Notes:

1. Create the Solaris host group at the storage subsystem level. Do not create host groups at the default group level.

   Exception: If you are running a DS4300 configuration without partitioning enabled, you can use the default host group.
2. In a cluster partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host group level so that all the hosts can see the same storage. In a normal partition, perform logical drive mappings on the host level.

For more information about storage partitioning, see “Storage Partitioning premium feature” on page 24.

Steps for defining a host group

Complete the following steps to define a Solaris host group:

1. Re-scan the storage subsystem, and then click **Manage the Device** to return to the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Subsystem Management window, click the **Mappings View** tab.
3. In the Topology section of the Mappings window, highlight the name of the storage subsystem, and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host Group**.

   Note: Make sure that the storage subsystem is highlighted in the left panel of the Subsystem Management window. Do not click on Undefined Mappings.
4. Type the name of the new host group (for example, `Solaris`). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
5. Select the new host group and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host**.
6. Define the new host. Type the name of the Solaris host to which the storage subsystem is attached.
   a. Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
   b. Highlight the host that you just added, then right-click and select **Define Host Port**.
   c. Type or select the desired host port for the first HBA, and then change the host type to **Solaris**. Click **Add**.

      Note: Failure to change the host type from the default to Solaris causes undesired results.
   d. Choose the host port for the second HBA and click **Add**, and then click **Close**.

      Note: If you use two HBAs you must define two host ports. Failure to do so causes undesired results.
   e. Click **Storage Subsystem —> Exit**.

Mapping LUNS to a storage partition

This section contains the following procedures:

- “Mapping LUNs to a new partition”
- “Mapping LUNs to an existing storage partition” on page 106

Recommendation: It is recommended that you do not map at the host group level. If you do, every host can see all the LUNs.

Mapping LUNs to a new partition

When mapping LUNs for the first time to a newly created partition, complete the following steps.

Before you begin: Read “DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning” on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.

2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Storage Partitioning**. The Define Storage Partitioning window opens.
3. In the Define Storage Partitioning window, select **Host**, then click **Next**.
4. Select the logical drive by name, on the right side of the window.
5. Accept the default LUN ID, or change it, then click **Add**.
6. Repeat step 5 for each LUN that you want to map to the partition.

Mapping LUNs to an existing storage partition

Before you begin: Read "DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning" on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

Complete the following steps to map LUNs to an existing storage partition:

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Additional Mappings**. The Define Additional Mappings window opens.
3. In the Define Additional Mappings window, select the following options, and then click **Add**:
   - Host group or host
   - Logical unit number (LUN)
   - The logical drive that you want to map

   Note: It is recommended that you do not map at the host group level. If you do, every host can see all the LUNs.

Repeat these steps for each LUN that you want to map to the partition.

Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations

DS4000 Storage Manager supports IBM DS4000 Fibre Channel Storage Servers in direct-attached Solaris configurations or in a SAN environment through switches in Solaris configurations.

Creating a direct-attached configuration

In a direct-attached configuration, one or two Solaris servers can be connected to DS4000 storage servers.

Requirements:

- Two-server DS4400 or DS4500 configurations require four host-side minihubs, each with exactly one Fibre Channel connection from each HBA to a minihub.

  Note: DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not have minihubs.
- No external hubs can be used.

Complete the following steps to set up a direct-attached configuration:

1. Connect the HBAs to each controller or minihub port of the DS4000 storage server.
2. Configure and verify the configuration.

Creating a SAN-attached configuration

Use the following procedure to create a SAN-attached configuration.

Requirements:

- Multiple HBAs within the same server must be unable to “see” the same DS4000 controller port.
- The JNI HBAs must be isolated from each other if they are connected to the same switch that is connected to the same DS4000 controller port.
- Each HBA and controller port must be in its own fabric zone, if they are connecting through a single switch, such as a 2109-F16.

  See the documentation provided by the switch manufacturer for more information about zoning. Multiple DS4000 devices can be configured to the same set of HBAs through a Fibre Channel switch.

Complete the following steps to set up a SAN-attached configuration:

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

1. Connect the HBAs to the switch or switches.
2. Connect the DS4000 storage subsystems to the switch or switches.
3. Set the required zones on the Fibre Channel switch or switches, if applicable.
4. Configure and verify the configuration.

Configuring the host bus adapter cards

Before you can install the failover driver, you must install the HBA driver package and modify the configuration file settings using the following procedures:

JNI

- “Installing the JNI adapter driver package”
- “Modifying the HBA settings and binding the HBAs” on page 109 (SAN-attached only)

QLogic

- “Installing the QLogic adapter driver package” on page 115
- “Modifying the QLogic HBA settings” on page 116

Note: The QLogic HBA is supported only on Solaris 8 an 9 operating systems.

Installing the JNI adapter driver package

The procedures for installing the JNI adapter driver package and modifying the JNI HBA settings both refer to Table 25.

Table 25. JNI model numbers and configuration files

JNI HBA model numbers	Configuration files
FC64-1063-N	/kernel/drv/fcaw.conf
FCI-1063-N	/kernel/drv/fca-pci.conf
FCE2-1063, FCE2-1063, FCE-6410, FCE2-6412	/kernel/drv/jnic.conf

Table 25. JNI model numbers and configuration files (continued)

JNI HBA model numbers	Configuration files
FCE-1473, FCE2-1473, FCE-6412 (2 Gb), FCE-6460	/kernel/drv/jnic146x.conf

Before you begin:

1. Ensure that the JNI HBAs have been installed and attached directly to the controllers or to a SAN fabric switch.
2. If attached to SAN fabric switch, ensure that the zones for the DS4000 storage subsystem have been created and enabled.

   Notes:

   a. All fabric switches must be zoned in such a way that a single HBA can access only one controller per storage array.

   b. For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, "Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment," on page 209.
3. In the DS4000/Solaris readme file, identify the correct driver packages for the installed HBAs. You can find the readme file at the following Web site:

   www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

   Click the link for your storage server.

   When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.

Complete the following steps to install the JNI adapter driver package:

1. Download the most current HBA driver package, as listed in the readme file, from the following Web site:

   www.jni.com/Drivers
2. Run the following command to install the JNI adapter driver package:

```
#pkgadd -d adapter_driver_package
```

   where *adapter_driver_package* is the name of the adapter driver package that you want to install, as in the following example:

```
#pkgadd -d JNIC146x.pkg
```

3. Run the following command to verify that the JNI adapter drive package is installed:

```
#pkginfo adapter_driver_package
```

   where *adapter_driver_package* is the name of the adapter driver package that you installed, as in the following example:

```
#pkginfo -l JNIC146x.pkg
```

4. Type the following command to reboot the Solaris host:

```
#reboot -- -r
```

Modifying the HBA settings and binding the HBAs

The loop settings in the JNI configuration file are set by default to private loop for direct-attach configurations. For a SAN-attached configuration that uses a fabric switch, modify the loop settings to bind the HBAs to the DS4000 storage controller before you install the failover driver on the host.

This section contains the following procedures:

- "Modifying the JNI HBA settings for McData, Cisco, InRange, and Brocade 1 GB switches"
- "Modifying the JNI HBA settings for a Brocade 2 Gb switch" on page 112

Attention: If you have a direct-attached configuration, skip this section and proceed to "Installing the RDAC failover driver" on page 117 or "Installing the DMP failover driver" on page 119. You do not need to modify JNI HBA settings if you have a direct-attached configuration.

Modifying the JNI HBA settings for McData, Cisco, InRange, and Brocade 1 GB switches

Before you begin: Table 25 on page 107 lists the configuration file for each JNI adapter driver package. Also, some of the steps in these procedures refer to Appendix B, "JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings," on page 193.

Complete the following procedures to modify the JNI HBA settings.

Modifying the loop settings:

1. Run the following commands.

```
#cd /kernel/drv
#vi JNI_configuration_file
```

   where *JNI_configuration_file* is the JNI configuration file whose HBA settings you want to modify, as in the following example:

```
#cd /kernel/drv
#vi jnic146x.conf
```

2. In the Vi Editor, uncomment and modify the loop attributes using the information that is listed in Appendix B, "JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings," on page 193.
3. Run the following command to save changes made to the JNI configuration file.

```
#:wq
```

4. Run the following command to reboot the Solaris host.

```
#reboot -- -r
```

Gathering the binding information:

1. After the host reboots, run the following commands to gather binding information in the messages log.

```
#cd /var/adm
#more messages
```

The messages log displays, as in the following example:

```
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 550325 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
Hba: JNI,FCR     Model: FCX2-6562
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 277434 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
FCode: Version 3.8.9 [BAFA]
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 188160 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
IRQ: 1  Channel: 1
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 428106 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
SubVend: 1242  Sub: 6562  Rev: b100  Vend: 124 2  Dev: 1560
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 904290 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
WWNN: 1000000173008A2E  WWPN: 2000000173008A2E
Jul 18 14:33:51 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 695386 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
Auto-negotiating link speed
Jul 18 14:33:51 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 873028 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
Configured as Private Loop port
Jul 18 14:33:52 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 245684 kern.notice] jnic146x0:
JNIC v5.2.3 (03042900)

Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 550325 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
Hba: JNI,FCR     Model: FCX2-6562
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 277434 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
FCode: Version 3.8.9 [BAFA]
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 188160 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
IRQ: 1  Channel: 1
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 428106 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
SubVend: 1242  Sub: 6562  Rev: b100  Vend: 124 2  Dev: 1560
Jul 18 14:33:50 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 904290 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
WWNN: 1000000173009A2E  WWPN: 2000000173009A2E
Jul 18 14:33:51 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 695386 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
Auto-negotiating link speed
Jul 18 14:33:51 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 873028 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
Configured as Private Loop port
Jul 18 14:33:52 sunburn jnic146x: [ID 245684 kern.notice] jnic146x1:
JNIC v5.2.3 (03042900)
```

2. Search the messages log for the most recent HBA information. You can do this with a backwards search for the installed HBAs.

```
# /SunOS
```

3. Record the following information about the installed HBAs:
   - The JNI driver instances
   - The WWPNs

   For example, for the output listed above, you would record the following information:

JNI driver instance	WWPN
jnic146x0	2000000173008A2E
jnic146x1	2000000173009A2E

After you finish gathering the binding information, continue to the next procedure, “Binding the HBAs to storage controllers” on page 111.

Binding the HBAs to storage controllers: The examples in this procedure assume that you are binding two JNIC FCE-6460 HBAs to the DS4000 controllers. Adjust the steps for your specific configuration.

1. Run the following commands to open the JNI configuration file.

```
#cd /kernel/drv
#vi JNI_configuration_file
```

   where *JNI_configuration_file* is the name of the JNI configuration file of the HBA that you want to modify.

   For example, the following commands open the jnic146x.conf file.

```
#cd /kernel/drv
#vi jnic146x.conf
```

2. In the file, search for a section called `Configuration parameters for target to FC device mappings`, as shown in the following example:

```
###############################################################################
#
# Configuration parameters for target to FC device mapping:
#
#    targetX_hba,
#    targetX_lunY_hba,
#    targetX_wwnn,
#    targetX_wwpn,
#    targetX_port,
#
# Type: string
# Default:
#
# Example usage: Replace the 'x' characters with actual WWNN, WWPN, or port ID.
#
# target0_hba      = "jnic146x0";
# target0_lun0_hba = "jnic146x0";
# target0_wwnn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_wwpn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_port     = "xxxxxx";
# jnic146x0-target0_lun0_hba="jnic146x0";
# jnic146x0-target0_wwnn="xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";



# Example usage: Replace the 'x' characters with actual WWNN, WWPN, or port ID.
#
# target0_hba      = "jnic146x0";
# target0_lun0_hba = "jnic146x0";
# target0_wwnn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_wwpn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_port     = "xxxxxx";
# jnic146x0-target0_lun0_hba="jnic146x0";
# jnic146x0-target0_wwnn="xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
```

3. Using the information that you recorded in the previous procedure, “Gathering the binding information” on page 109, add the following parameters to the file for each HBA:
   - Target*x*_hba = JNI driver instance
   - Target*x*_wwpn = Controller WWPN

For example:

```
Target0_hba = jnic146x0
Target0_wwpn = 2000000173008A2E

Target1_hba = jnic146x1
Target1_wwpn = 2000000173009A2E
```

4. Run the following command to save the changes to the JNI configuration file.

```
#:wq
```

5. Run the following command to reboot the Solaris host.

```
#reboot -- -r
```

Modifying the JNI HBA settings for a Brocade 2 Gb switch

If you are using a Brocade 2 Gb switch, you need to force the HBA (FCC-6460, FCE-1473, or FCE2-1473 operating in 2 Gb mode) to be a public loop device.

If you are using any other switch, see “Modifying the JNI HBA settings for McData, Cisco, InRange, and Brocade 1 GB switches” on page 109 for the correct modification procedures.

Complete the following procedures to modify the JNI HBA settings.

Gathering the binding information:

1. Open the /var/adm/messages file by typing the following command:

```
# more /var/adm/messages
```

2. Perform a backwards search of the /var/adm/messages file by typing the following command:

```
# /SunOS
```

3. Look for the HBAs in the /var/adm/messages file. For example, you might see the following information in the /var/adm/messages file:

```
May  6 10:02:11 solar unix: jnic146x0: Port 011000
(WWN 200200a0b80f478e:200300a0b80f478f) online.
May  6 10:02:11 solar unix: jnic146x3: Port 610300
(WWN 200200a0b80f478e:200200a0b80f478f) online.
```

4. Record the following information about the installed HBAs:
   - The JNI driver instances
   - The WWPNs

   For example, for the output listed above, you would record the following information:

JNI driver instance	WWPN
jnic146x0	200300a0ba0f478F
jnic146x3	200200a0ba0f478F

5. Record the WWPN for each FCE-6460-N adapter that is installed on the host. In this example, the WWPN is `200300a0ba0f478F` for an adapter on `target 0`, and would be `200200a0ba0f478F` for an adapter on `target 3`:

   Attention: In the messages file, notice that each adapter has a network port and a port. Do not use the WWPN for the network port; only use the WWPN for the port.

Opening the JNI configuration file: The examples in this procedure assume that you are binding two JNIC FCE-6460 HBAs to the controllers.

Before you begin: See Appendix B, "JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings," on page 193 and modify settings accordingly.

1. Type the following command:

```
vi /kernel/drv/jnic146x.conf
```

2. In the file, look for the section titled `Parameters: FcLoopEnabled and FcFabricEnabled`. Highlight and copy the following text:

```
  -jnic 146x0-FcLoopEnabled=1;
  -jnic 146x0-FcFabricEnabled=0;
```

3. Paste the copy immediately following the text that you copied in step 2, as shown in the following example:

```
-jnic 146x0-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x0-FcFabricEnabled=0;
-jnic 146x0-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x0-FcFabricEnabled=0;
```

4. Change the target values according to the information that you gathered from the /var/adm/messages file. In this example, one controller is on `target 0` and the other controller is on `target 3`:

```
-jnic 146x0-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x0-FcFabricEnabled=0;
-jnic 146x3-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x3-FcFabricEnabled=0;
```

5. Set the FcLoopEnabled and FcFabricEnabled attributes, as shown in the following example, in which both controllers are attached to a 2 Gb switch:

```
-jnic 146x0-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x0-FcFabricEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x3-FcLoopEnabled=1;
-jnic 146x3-FcFabricEnabled=1;
```

   Note: Brocade 2 Gb switches (public):

   - FcLoopEnable=1
   - FcFabricEnable=1

Binding the HBAs to the storage controllers: Complete the following steps to set and change the target variables to the specified values:

1. In the jnic146x.conf file, search for a section called `Configuration parameters for target to FC device mappings`, as shown in the following example:

```
#############################################################################
#
# Configuration parameters for target to FC device mapping:
#
#    targetX_hba,
#    targetX_lunY_hba,
#    targetX_wwnn,
#    targetX_wwpn,
#    targetX_port,
#
# Type: string
# Default:
#
# Example usage: Replace the 'x' characters with actual WWNN, WWPN, or port ID.
#
# target0_hba      = "jnic146x0";
# target0_lun0_hba = "jnic146x0";
# target0_wwnn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_wwpn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_port     = "xxxxxx";
# jnic146x0-target0_lun0_hba="jnic146x0";
# jnic146x0-target0_wwnn="xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";



# Example usage: Replace the 'x' characters with actual WWNN, WWPN, or port ID.
#
# target0_hba      = "jnic146x0";
# target0_lun0_hba = "jnic146x0";
# target0_wwnn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_wwpn     = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
# target0_port     = "xxxxxx";
# jnic146x0-target0_lun0_hba="jnic146x0";
# jnic146x0-target0_wwnn="xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx";
```

2. Using the information that you recorded in the previous procedure, “Gathering the binding information” on page 112, add the following parameters to the file for each HBA:
   - Target*x*_hba = JNI driver instance
   - Target*x*_wwpn = Controller WWPN

   For example:

```
Target0_hba = jnic146x0
Target0_wwpn = 200300a0ba0f478F

Target1_hba = jnic146x3
Target1_wwpn = 200200a0ba0f478F
```

3. Type the following command to save the changes to the JNI configuration file:

```
#:wq
```

4. Type the following command to reboot and configure the Solaris host:

```
#reboot -- -r
```

When you are finished, install the failover driver on the host. See “Installing the RDAC failover driver” on page 117 or “Installing the DMP failover driver” on page 119 for more information.

Installing the QLogic adapter driver package

This section describes how to install the QLogic adapter driver package.

Note: The QLogic HBA is supported only on Solaris 8 and 9 operating systems.

Before you begin:

- Ensure that the QLogic HBAs have been installed, and are attached either directly to the controllers or to the SAN fabric switch.
- If the HBAs are attached to a SAN fabric switch, ensure that the zones for the DS4000 storage subsystem are created and enabled.

  Notes:

  1. All fabric switches must be zoned in such a way that a single HBA can access only one controller per storage array.
  2. For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, "Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment," on page 209.

Complete the following steps to install the QLogic adapter driver package.

1. Download the most current adapter driver package from the following Web site to a local directory on the host:

   www.QLogic.com
2. Un-compress the QLogic adapter driver package, by typing the following command:

```
#uncompress qlogic_adapter_driver.
```

   where *qlogic_adapter_driver* is the name of the compressed adapter driver (for example, `qla2300_pkg_v408.Z`).
3. Install the QLogic adapter driver package, by typing the following command:

```
#pkgadd -d adapter_driver_pkg
```

   where *adapter_driver_pkg* is the name of the package that you want to install (for example, `qla2300_pkg_408`). A package installation menu displays.
4. From the package installation menu, select package 3:

```
3. QLA2300-3 QLogic QLA23000 driver
             (Sparc) Solaris 8-9, Rev=4.08
```

   Note: You do not need to install any of the QLSDMLIB packages that display in the package installation menu.
5. Follow the instructions in the package installation utility to install the QLogic adapter driver package.

   Note: When the following screen displays, press **Enter** to install the driver object in the default directory (/kernel/drv):

```
Where do you want the driver object installed?
[default = /kernel/drv]
```

6. Verify that the QLogic adapter package is installed, by typing the following command:

```
#pkginfo -l pkg_version
```

where *pkg_version* is the name of the adapter driver package that you installed (for example, QLA2300–3).

7. The following screen displays. Type y, then press **Enter**.

```
Do you want to continue with the installation of the pkg_version?
[y, n, ?]
```

where *pkg_version* is the name of the adapter driver package that you installed (for example, QLA2300–3).

8. Reboot the Solaris host, by typing the following command:

```
# reboot -- -r
```

When you are done, go to the next procedure, “Verifying the HBA installation.”

Verifying the HBA installation

Complete the following steps to verify that the HBAs are installed:

1. Type the following command:

```
# view /var adm messages
```

A list of administrative messages displays.

2. Scroll down the list until you see the HBAs listed.
3. Record the WWPN and the HBA number for each of the two HBA cards.

When you are done, go to the next procedure, “Modifying the QLogic HBA settings.”

Modifying the QLogic HBA settings

Complete the following steps to modify the QLogic HBA settings:

1. Open the QLogic configuration file, by typing the following commands:

```
# cd /kernel/drv
# vi QLogic_conf_file.conf
```

where *QLogic_conf_file*.conf is the name of the QLogic configuration file (for example, qla2300.conf).

2. In the Vi Editor, uncomment and modify the loop attributes on each of the two QLogic HBA cards, using the information that is listed in Appendix B, “JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings,” on page 193.
3. Save the changes to the QLogic configuration file, by typing the following command:

```
#:wq
```

4. Reboot the Solaris host, by typing the following command:

```
# reboot -- -r
```

When you are finished, install the failover driver, as described in the next section.

Installing a failover driver on Solaris

You can install either the RDAC failover driver or the DMP failover driver on your Solaris system.

This section includes the following procedures:

- "Installing the RDAC failover driver"
- "Installing the DMP failover driver" on page 119

Installing the RDAC failover driver

This section describes how to install RDAC on a Solaris host.

Before you begin: You must install a JNI or QLogic driver package before you install RDAC. If you have a SAN-attached configuration, you must also modify the JNI or QLogic configuration file before you install RDAC. If you fail to follow the procedures in this order, problems can occur.

For information about how to install the JNI or QLogic HBA driver packages and modify the settings, see "Configuring the host bus adapter cards" on page 107.

Note: Modifying failover settings in the JNI or QLogic configuration file after installing RDAC requires the removal of the RDAC from the host.

Steps for installing the RDAC failover driver

Before you begin: Check the readme file at the following Web site to ensure that you have the latest version of RDAC:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Solaris and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Solaris.

The latest versions are listed in the readme file.

Complete the following steps to install RDAC:

1. Insert the Solaris installation CD in the CD-ROM drive.

   Note: In this procedure, the installation CD is mounted at /cdrom/SM91. Modify these commands as needed for your installation.
2. Type the following command to start installing the RDAC package:

```
# pkgadd -d path/filename.pkg
```

   where *path/filename* is the directory path and name of the package that you want to install.

   The installation process begins.

   Information about packages that can be installed in the specified directory is displayed on the command line, as in the following example:

```
The following packages are available:

1 RDAC                          Redundant Disk Array Controller
                                (sparc) version number

Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all' to process all
packages). (default:all)  [?,??,q]:
```

3. Type the value of the package you are installing and press **Enter**.

   The installation process begins.
4. The software automatically checks for package conflicts. If any conflicts are detected, a message is displayed indicating that some files are already installed and are in use by another package.

   The following prompt is displayed:

```
Do you want to install these conflicting files [y, n, ?]
```

   Type y and press **Enter**.
5. The following prompt is displayed:

```
This package contains scripts which will be executed with super-user
permission during the process of installing this package.

Do you want to continue with the installation of <RDAC>

[y, n, ?]
```

   Type y and press **Enter**.

   The installation process continues.
6. When the RDAC package has been successfully installed, the following message is displayed:

```
Installation of <RDAC> was successful.
```

   Ensure that the variables in the configuration files for the JNI adapter cards have been set to the correct values. For information about these configuration files and their variables, see “Modifying the HBA settings and binding the HBAs” on page 109.
7. Reboot the Solaris host by typing the following command:

```
# reboot -- -r
```

Attention: Any modifications to the persistent bindings in the jnic146.conf requires the removal of RDAC. After the RDAC is removed you can modify the persistent bindings in the jnic146x.conf, and then re-install RDAC.

Complete the following steps to modify the sd.conf or jnic146x.conf files:

1. Remove RDAC by typing the following command:

```
#pkgrm RDAC_driver_pkg_name
```

   where *RDAC_driver_pkg_name* is the name of the RDAC driver package that you want to remove.
2. Verify RDAC drive package removal by typing the following command:

```
#pkginfo RDAC_driver_pkg_name
```

where *RDAC_driver_pkg_name* is the name of the RDAC driver package that you removed.

3. Reboot the Solaris host by typing the following command:

```
#reboot -- -r
```

4. Modify persistent bindings in the jnic146x.conf or edit the sd.conf file by typing the following command:

```
# vi /kernel/drv/jnic146x.conf or sd.conf
```

   When you have finished making changes, run the following command to save the changes:

```
#:wq
```

5. Install the RDAC driver package by typing the following command:

```
#pkgadd -d RDAC_driver_pkg_name
```

   where *RDAC_driver_pkg_name* is the name of the RDAC driver package that you want to install.

6. Verify package installation by typing the following command:

```
#pkginfo RDAC_driver_pkg_name
```

   where *RDAC_driver_pkg_name* is the name of the RDAC driver package that you installed.

7. Reboot the Solaris host by typing the following command:

```
#reboot -- -r
```

Note: You must reboot the host after modifying the jnic146x.conf file, because the jnic146x.conf driver is only read during the boot process. Failure to reboot the host might result in some devices being inaccessible.

Installing the DMP failover driver

This section describes how to install VERITAS Dynamic Multipathing (DMP), which is a failover driver for Solaris hosts. While RDAC allows you to have only 32 LUNs, DMP allows you to have up to 256 LUNs.

Related reading: For more information about using VERITAS DMP, see the VERITAS Volume Manager and VERITAS File System v3.5 documentation for Solaris, which you can download from the following Web site:

www.veritas.com

System requirements

Ensure that your system meets the following requirements for installing DMP:

- Solaris operating system
- VERITAS Volume Manager 3.5
- SMibmasl.pkg (enables Solaris to recognize the DS4000 machine type)

DMP installation overview

Ensure that your system meets the following prerequisites for installing DMP:

- The HBAs are installed on the Solaris host.
- The JNI HBA package is installed.
- The parameter settings in the JNI configuration file (for example, Jnic146x.conf) are modified.
- In a SAN environment, bindings are configured.
- The zones are created and enabled for the Solaris partition.
- Storage is mapped to the Solaris partition.

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, "Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment," on page 209.

Perform the following procedures, in the order listed, to complete the DMP installation:

1. "Preparing for VERITAS DMP installation"
2. "Installing VERITAS Volume Manager packages for DMP" on page 122
3. "Installing the SMibmasl software package" on page 125
4. "Configuring VERITAS Volume Manager" on page 125
5. "Starting the VERITAS Enterprise Administrator" on page 129

Preparing for VERITAS DMP installation

Complete the following steps to prepare the host for installing VERITAS DMP:

1. Choose the Solaris host on which you want to install DMP.
2. Manually define the targets and LUNs in the /kernel/drv/sd.conf file, by completing the following steps.

   By default, the /kernel/drv/sd.conf file defines targets 0, 1, 2, and 3. LUN0 also is defined for targets 0, 1, 2, and 3.

   Notes:

   - Each target represents a controller to a subsystem, and each LUN represents a logical drive.
   - If you are adding additional target or LUN definitions to the /kernel/drv/sd.conf file for an existing DMP configuration, be sure to reboot the Solaris host.

   a. Open the /kernel/drv/sd.conf file with the Vi Editor, by typing the following command:

```
# vi /kernel/drv/sd.conf
```

The file looks similar to the following example:

```
#
# Copyright (c) 1992, Sun Microsystems, Inc.
#
#ident "@(#)sd.conf 1.9  98/01/11 SMI"

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=0 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=1 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=2 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=3 lun=0;
```

b. Add additional target and LUN definitions, using the Vi Editor. In the following example, it is assumed that the Solaris host is attached to one DS4000 subsystem with three LUNs mapped to the DS4000 storage partition. In addition, the access LUN must be mapped to the partition.

```
#
# Copyright (c) 1992, Sun Microsystems, Inc.
#
#ident "@(#)sd.conf 1.9  98/01/11 SMI"

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=0 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=1 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=2 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" class_prop="atapi"
target=3 lun=0;

name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=2;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=3;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=0 lun=31;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=1 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=1 lun=2;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=1 lun=3;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=1 lun=31;
```

c. Save the new entries in the /kernel/drv/sd.conf fil, by typing the following command:

```
#:wq
```

3. Verify that RDAC is not installed on the host, by typing the following command:

```
# pkginfo -l RDAC
```

4. If RDAC is installed, remove it by typing the following command:

```
# pkgrm RDAC
```

5. Verify that a host partition has been created. If not, create one by following the procedure that is described in “Storage Partitioning: Defining a Solaris host group” on page 104.

   Attention: Set the host port type to Solaris DMP. Failure to do so results in an inability to map for more than the RDAC limit of 32 LUNs, and causes other undesired results.
6. Ensure that all of the paths are optimal, and are in a preferred path state from the SMclient.
7. Reboot the host and ensure that the devices show up, by typing the following command:

```
# SMdevices
```

8. Verify that you have a 1 GB logical drive available for the rootdg.
9. Label the logical drive that you are using for the rootdg, by typing the following command:

```
# format
```

10. Reboot the Solaris host, by typing the following command:

```
# reboot -- -r
```

Installing VERITAS Volume Manager packages for DMP

The installation steps that are described in this section are based on a CD installation of VERITAS.

Before you begin: Ensure that you have the VERITAS Volume Manager license key, and any other VERITAS licenses that you want to install, available during the installation process.

Complete the following steps to install VERITAS Volume Manager packages for DMP:

1. Insert the VERITAS CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the mounted CD directory. If you are unsure about the mount point path to the CD-ROM, type the following command:

```
#df
```

   The result is similar to the following example:

```
/            (/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0):22222222 blocks 173544  files
/proc        (/proc             ):           0 blocks  29903   files
/dev/fd      (fd                ):           0 blocks      0   files
/etc//mnttab (mnt               ):           0 blocks       0  files
/var/run     (swap              ): 6764416   blocks 210436 files
/tmp         (swap              ):6764416    blocks 210436 files
/cdrom/storage_solutions_solaris_3.5cd1
(/vol/dev/dsk/c1t6d0/storage_solutions_solaris_3.5cd1):
22222222 blocks 500 files
```

   Note: In this example, you would type the following command to go to the mounted CD directory:

```
# cd /cdrom/storage_solutions_solaris_3.5dc1
```

3. Run the VERITAS installer script, by typing the following commands:

```
# ls
```

```
# ./installer
```

Note: The output of the **# ls** command is similar to the following:

```
cluster_server           menu
database_ac_for_oracle9i sanpoint_foundation_suite
file_system              traffic_director
installer                volume_manager
installer.pdf            win32
```

4. A new screen displays. Type y and press **Enter** to install VRTSvlic, as shown in the following example:

```
VERITAS Storage Solutions
Looking for package VRTSvlic
Currently installed 0
Minimum Version:3.00.000

For release Train installation to continue, VRTSvlic
must installed or upgraded.
Do you want to install it now? [y,n]: y
```

5. The VERITAS Storage Solutions screen displays. Install the license for VERITAS Volume Manager 3.5 by selecting option 1 (Add License Key), as shown in the following example:

```
    VERITAS Storage Solutions
VERITAS Product         Currently Installed   Licensed
============================================================
Volume Manager           Not Installed             No
File System              Not Installed             No
Foundation Suite         Not Installed             No
Volume Replicator        Not Installed             No
Flash Snap               Not Installed             No
Database Edition for Ora Not Installed             No


1= Add License Key 2=Installation Menu 3=Refresh h=help
p= Product Description  q=quit

Enter [1,2,3,h,p,q]: 1
```

6. Type the VERITAS license key, as shown in the following example:

```
    VERITAS Storage Solutions
Please enter your VERITAS license key: XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX
```

7. After the license is successfully installed, a product summary screen displays. Install VERITAS Volume Manager by selecting option 2 (Installation Menu), as shown in the following example.

   Requirement: Allow VERITAS to install conflicting files. At a minimum, you must install the VRTSvmpro file. If you want to use the GUI version of VERITAS Volume Manager, you must also install additional packages. See the

VERITAS Volume Manager 3.5 installation documentation if you want to install the VERITAS Volume Manager GUI.

```
        VERITAS Storage Solutions
VERITAS Product         Currently Installed   Licensed
============================================================
Volume Manager           Not Installed          Yes
File System              Not Installed          Yes
Foundation Suite          Not Installed          Yes
Volume Replicator        Not Installed          No
Flash Snap               Not Installed          No
Database Edition for Ora Not Installed          No


1= Add License Key 2=Installation Menu 3=Refresh h=help
p= Product Description  q=quit

Enter [1,2,3,h,p,q]: 2
```

8. A list of available products displays. Install VERITAS Volume Manager by selecting option 1 (Volume Manager) from the products list, then type y and press **Enter**, as shown in the following example:

```
    VERITAS Storage Solutions
Available products:

  1) Volume Manager
  2) File System
  3) Foundation Suite (Quick Start, HA & Flash Snap)
  4) Volume Replicator
  5) Database Edition for Oracle
  6) Cluster Server
  7) SanPoint Foundation Suite
  8) Cluster Server QuickStart
  9) Database Edition/Advance Cluster for Oracle 9i
  10) Cluster Server Traffic Director

  q) Return to the main menu
  h) Installation help

 Enter the number of the product to install or [q,h]: 1


   VERITAS Storage Solutions

You are about to begin installation of Volume Manager

Do you want to continue? [y,n]: y
```

9. The following query displays:

```
Install for which version of Solaris? [9, 8, 7, 2.6] <default: 9>
```

Type the version level of your Solaris host.

10. A list of available products displays again. Install VERITAS file systems by selecting option 2 (File System), then typing y and pressing **Enter**.

    Note: Allow VERITAS to install conflicting files, and when prompted to install setuid/setgid files and the VRTSvxfs file, answer y to both.

11. Exit the VERITAS installer by selecting option q (Return to the main menu) on the products screen.

12. A product summary screen displays. Exit the screen by selecting option `q` (quit), as shown in the following example:

```
        VERITAS Storage Solutions
VERITAS Product         Currently Installed   Licensed
============================================================
Volume Manager      3.5, REV=06.21.2002.23.14 Yes
File System         3.5, REV=GA06                  Yes
Foundation Suite       3.5                            Yes
Volume Replicator      3.5, REV=06.21.2002.23.14      Yes
Flash Snap             3.5, REV=06.21.2002.23.14      Yes
Database Edition for Ora Not Installed        No


1= Add License Key 2=Installation Menu 3=Refresh h=help
p= Product Description  q=quit

Enter [1,2,3,h,p,q]: q
```

Installing the SMibmasl software package

Complete the following steps to install the SMibmasl software package:

1. Install the SMibmasl package, by typing the following command:

   Tip: You can select either the default (`all`), or select option `1`.

```
#pkgadd -d SMibmasl_pkg
```

2. Reboot the Solaris host, by typing the following command:

```
# reboot -- -r
```

Configuring VERITAS Volume Manager

Complete the following steps to configure the VERITAS Volume Manager:

1. Initialize one disk for rootdg, by typing the following command:

```
# vxinstall
```

   Note: You have already entered a license key for VERITAS Volume Manager and VERITAS File System. You do not need to install additional VERITAS software at this time. Unless you want to install additional VERITAS software at this time, type `n` (no) in response to both of the following questions:

```
Some licenses are already installed.
Do you wish to review them?
[y,n,q,?] (default: y) n

Do you wish to enter another
license key [y,n,q,?]
(default: n) n
```

2. The Volume Manager Installation screen displays. Choose whether to set up enclosure-based names for the DS4000-attached disks by typing `y` (yes) or `n` (no), as shown in the following example:

```
Volume Manager Installation
Menu: Volume Manager/Install

  VxVM will use the following format to name disks on the host:

  enclosurename_diskno

 In the above format, enclosurename is the logical name
of the enclosure to which the disk belongs.
VxVM assigns default enclosure names which
can be changed accordingly to the user requirements.

  Some examples would be:

  DS4000_2 - second disk detected in enclosure  'hitachio'
  Jbod_1 - first disk detected in the jbod category

  For non-public loop disks (Ex. FC disks directly
connected to the host or through Hubs),
you could choose to use the c#t#d#s# naming format.

 Do you want to use enclosure based names for all disks?
 [y,n,q,?] (default: n) n
```

3. The Volume Manager Installation screen displays. Press the Return key to continue the installation process, as shown in the following example:

```
Volume Manager Installation
Menu: Volume Manager/Install

    The Volume Manager has detected the following
categories of storage connected to your system:

    Enclosure:  Disk   IBM_DS4000_0

Hit RETURN to continue
```

4. The Volume Manager Installation Options screen displays. Select option 2 (Custom Installation), as shown in the following example.

```
Volume Manager Installation Options
Menu: VolumeManager/Install

 1. Quick Installation
 2. Custom Installation
 3. Prevent multipathing/Suppress devices from VxVM's view

 ? Display help about menu
 ?? Display help about the menuing system
 q Exit from menus

Select an operation to perform: 2
```

5. The Volume Manager Custom Installation screen displays. Select n (do not encapsulate the boot disk), as shown in the following example:

```
Volume Manager Custom Installation
Menu: VolumeManager/Install/Custom

The CxTxDx disk is your boot disk.
You can add it as a new disk.
If you encapsulate it, you will
make your root file system and
system areas on the Boot Disk
into volumes. This is required if
you wish to mirror your root file
system or system swaparea.

 Encapsulate Boot Disk [y,n,q,?] (default: n) n
```

6. The Volume Manager Custom Installation screen displays. Press the Return key to continue, as shown in the following example.

   Note: The disks shown should be the internal disks, not the FAStT/DS4000 disks that were just installed.

```
Volume Manager Custom Installation
Menu: VolumeManager/Install/Custom/Disk

Disk array serial number: DISKS

Generating list of disks in disk array Disk ...

<excluding root disk c0t0d0>

  The volume Manager has detected the following disks in
  Enclosure Disk:

  c0t1d0

Hit RETURN to continue.
```

7. The Installation Options for Controller Disk screen displays. Select option 3 (Install one disk at a time), as shown in the following example:

```
Installation Options for Controller Disk
Menu: Volume Manager/Install/Custom/Disk

   1 Install all disks as pre-existing disks. (encapsulate)
   2 Install all disks as news disks. (discard data on disks!)
   3  Install one disk at a time.
   4  Leave these disks alone.

   ? Display help menu
   ?? Diplay help about the menuing system
   q Exit from menus

 Select an operation to perform: 3
```

8. The Installation Options for Enclosure *YYYYYY* screen displays for the internal disks, where *YYYYYY* represents the name of the enclosure for the internal disks. Select option 4 (Leave these disks alone).
9. The Installation Options for Enclosure *ZZZZZZ* screen displays for the FAStT/DS4000 disks, where *ZZZZZZ* represents the name of the enclosure for the FAStT/DS4000 disks. Select option 3 (Install one disk at a time).

   The next screen will show a list of all the newly installed FAStT/DS4000 disks, multiplied by the number of paths; since the redundancy software (DMP) has

not been installed yet, the host treats each path to the new devices as a different disk. Press the Return key when prompted to continue.

10. The Installation Options for Disk *ZZZZZZ* displays. For the rootdg, select option 2 (Install as a new disk).

    In the following example, c8t4d0 is the logical drive that is being used as the rootdg for VERITAS DMP:

```
Installation options for disk c8t4d0
Menu: VolumeManager /Install/Custom/Disk/IBM_DS4000_0

   1 Install as pre-existing disk. (encapsulate)
   2 Install as a new disk. (discard data on disks!)
   3 Leave this disk alone.

   ? Display help menu
   ?? Display help about the menuing system
   q Exit from menus

Select an operation to perform: 2

Are you sure (destroys data on c8t4d0) [y,n,q,?]
    (default: n) Y

Enter disk name for c8t4d0 [<name>,q,?] (default: disk 01)
```

11. The Installation Options for Disk *XYXYXY* displays. Select option 3 (Leave this disk alone) for all non-rootdg logical drives, as shown in the following example:

```
Installation options for disk c8t4d1
Menu: VolumeManager /Install/Custom/Disk/IBM_DS4000_0

   1 Install as pre-existing disk. (encapsulate)
   2 Install as a new disk. (discard data on disks!)
   3 Leave this disk alone.

   ? Display help menu
   ?? Diplay help about the menuing system
   q Exit from menus

Select an operation to perform: 3
```

12. Be sure to repeat step 11 for each of the remaining disks on the DS4000 storage array.
13. A summary screen displays, similar to the following example. Press **Enter**.

```
Volume Manager Custom Installation
Menu: VolumeManager /Install/Custom/Disk/IBM_DS4000_0

  The following is a summary of your choices.

   C8t4d0   New disk

Is this correct [y,n,?] (default: y) ENTER
```

14. Status information displays, similar to the following example. When the display has completed, select y (yes) to reboot the system.

```
The Volume Manager is now reconfiguring (partition phase) ...

Volume Manager: Partitioning c8t4d0 as a new disk

The Volume Manager in now reconfiguring (initialization phase) ...

Volume Manager: Adding disk01 (c8t4d0) as new disk.

The volume Daemon has been enabled for tranactions.

The system now must be shut down and rebooted in order to
continue the reconfiguration.

Shutdown and reboot now [y,n,q,?] (default:n) Y
```

15. After the reboot completes, run the **SMdevices** command, and verify that all devices from the FAStT/DS4000 subsystems are displayed.

    Note: With DMP, the total number of devices that **SMdevices** displays is equal to the number of paths multiplied by the actual number of devices. However, only one instance of each physical device will be the Preferred Path. All the others will be Alternate Path.

Starting the VERITAS Enterprise Administrator

After you have installed the VERITAS packages, and configured the rootdg, you must stop and restart the VERITAS Enterprise Administrator (VEA).

Tip: VEA starts automatically after a reboot.

Complete the following steps to start VEA:

1. Stop the VEA service, by typing the following command at the command prompt:

```
# /opt/VRTSob/bin/vxsvc -k
```

2. Restart the VEA service, by typing the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTSob/bin/vxsvc
```

3. Verify the state of the VEA service, by typing the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTSob/bin/vxsvc -m
```

4. Start the VEA GUI, by typing the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTSob/bin/vea &
```

5. Login to the VEA GUI, and re-scan.

When you are done, you have completed installing VERITAS DMP for the Solaris host.

See the VERITAS documentation for information about how to complete the following tasks:

- Set up disk groups
- Create volumes
- Create file systems

- Mount file systems

Verifying external storage

After you install the failover driver, complete the following steps to verify that the host recognizes the external storage.

Before you begin: SMutil must be installed on the host to enable the **SMdevices** and **hot_add** commands, which you use in the following procedure. For information about how to install SMutil, see “Steps for installing SMutil software (required)” on page 99.

Restriction: Do not delete the access LUN or the access logical drive. RDAC uses the access LUN for communication between controllers and DS4000 Storage Manager. Therefore, a storage subsystem with two controllers would require two access LUNs. The access LUN is typically assigned the LUN number 31, by default.

1. Run the following command to verify that the host recognizes the external DS4000 storage:

```
# /opt/IBM_FAStT/util/SMdevices
```

   You must see two access LUNS, and all the configured storage (logical drives). If any of these are missing, run the following command:

```
# /etc/raid/bin/hot_add
```

2. Run the following command to verify that SMutil and the host both recognize all the configured storage:

```
# format
```

   You must see two access LUNS, and all configured storage (logical drives). If you still do not see all the storage, check the following:
   - Recheck the zones.
   - Ensure that the zones have been enabled.
   - Recheck the targets and WWPNs.
   - Check to see if the DS4000 Controllers and expansion drawers are powered on.
   - Check to see if the switch or switches are powered on.
   - Check Fibre Channel cables.

Redistributing logical drives in case of failure

Auto Volume Transfer (AVT) is disabled, by default, on Solaris hosts. Therefore, if a failure occurs that initiates a controller failover, you must manually redistribute logical drives to their preferred paths.

Complete the following steps to manually redistribute logical drives to their preferred paths:

1. Repair or replace any faulty components. For more information, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Installation and Support Guide* for the appropriate DS4000 storage server.

2. Using the Subsystem Management window, redistribute logical drives to their preferred paths by clicking **Advanced —> Recovery —> Redistribute Logical Drives**.

Chapter 5. Installing and configuring storage management software on POWER-based Linux host systems

This chapter contains information about using DS4000 Storage Manager with the following Linux distributions for POWER-based operating systems:

- SUSE Enterprise Linux Server 9 (SLES 9)
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 (RHEL 3)

Important:

1. DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.12 (controller firmware 06.12.xx.xx) is not currently supported on POWER-based Linux hosts. You must use Storage Manager version 9.10 (controller firmware 06.10.xx.xx).
2. DS4000 Storage Manager client software is not currently available for POWER-based SLES 9 hosts. To manage DS4000 storage subsystems with your POWER-based SLES 9 host, you must install the Storage Manager client software (SMclient) on an AIX 5L, Solaris, HP-UX, Windows, i386 processor-based Linux, or Red Hat Linux on POWER server, and use that server as your storage management station.

   The DS4000 Storage Manager client software is supported on RHEL 3.

For additional Linux on POWER/pSeries support, see the following Web sites:

Linux on POWER resource center
www.ibm.com/servers/enable/linux/power/

Linux on pSeries support
www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/pseries/linux/

Hardware, firmware and system requirements

This section lists the following requirements:

- Hardware and firmware requirements for the DS4000 configuration
- Hardware and software requirements for your POWER-based SLES 9 or RHEL 3 host system

Important: For the latest installation requirements and user information, see the readme file that is located in the DS4000 Installation CD. The most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes this document, is maintained at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the resulting download files matrix, the links to the firmware downloads also provide the readme files for Storage Manager.

DS4000 requirements

Table 26 on page 134 lists the DS4000 Fibre Channel storage servers that you can use with POWER-based SLES 9 or RHEL 3 hosts.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 26. DS4000 storage servers that you can use with POWER-based Linux host systems

Product name	Model	Minimum appware/snapware (firmware) and NVSRAM versions
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server	1724-100	Check the latest readme file for the most up-to-date information. For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site: www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/ Click the link for your storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Linux on POWER and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Linux on POWER.
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-90U	
IBM TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server	1742-1RU	
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Standard and Turbo Fibre Channel Storage Servers	1722-60U, 1722-60X	

Table 27 on page 135 lists the DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosures and other hardware that are supported with POWER-based SLES 9 or RHEL 3 hosts.

Note: For important information about using the DS4000 EXP100 SATA storage expansion enclosure, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* (GC26-7601).

Table 27. Hardware that is supported with POWER-based Linux hosts

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Storage Expansion Enclosures	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 SATA Storage Expansion Enclosure	1710–10U or 10X	9554 **Note:** When upgrading the EXP100 to ESM firmware version 9554, you must use a storage subsystem that has Storage Manager controller firmware **05.41.1x.xx** installed . You cannot upgrade to ESM firmware 9554 using a storage subsystem with different firmware installed.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-710	9627
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	1740-1RU or 1RX	9326 **Note:** You must upgrade the EXP700 ESM firmware to version 9326 before you upgrade the Storage Manager controller firmware to version **06.1x.xx.xx**.
	IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP500 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Enclosure	3560-1RU or 1RX	9166
Host Bus Adapters	IBM HA Emulex LP9000	FC 6228	3.91A1
	IBM HA Emulex LP9002-F2	FC 6239	1.81X1
	IBM HA Emulex LP10000	FC 5716	1.90A4
Switches	Brocade switch	2109-S08 2109-S16	2.6.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-F16	3.1.2A
	Brocade switch	2109-M12	4.0.2C
	Brocade switch	2109-F32	4.2.0C
	Brocade switch	2109-F08	3.1.2A
	McData switch	2032-064, 2032-140	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-016	6.01.00 - 18
	McData switch	2031-216, 2031-224	6.01.00 - 18
	InRange switch	2042-001	4.3.0
	Cisco switch	2062-D01, 2062-D07, 2062-T07	1.3.4A

Table 27. Hardware that is supported with POWER-based Linux hosts (continued)

Hardware	Product Name	Model	Minimum firmware version
Check the latest readme file for the most up-to-date firmware versions. For the most recent readme files, see the following Web site: www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/ Click the link for your storage server. When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Linux on POWER and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Linux on POWER.			

Note: If you have any questions about the latest DS4000 interoperability information, see the DS4000 interoperability matrix at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds4000/interop-matrix.html

SUSE Enterprise Linux Server (SLES 9) system requirements

This section lists the minimum hardware and software requirements for a POWER-based host running SLES 9 on a DS4300 Turbo, DS4400, or DS4500 storage subsystem that is managed by DS4000 Storage Manager.

Host hardware requirements

The following hardware is required at minimum:

- **Host:** IBM @server pSeries or POWER server with 64-bit PowerPC Architecture™
- **Management station:** DS4000 Storage Manager client software is not supported on SLES 9 hosts, so you must install the Storage Manager software on a separate management station.
  - For Windows or i386-based Linux management stations, see the minimum requirements listed for those operating systems in *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Installation and Support Guide for Windows 2000/Server 2003, NetWare, ESX Server, and Linux* (GC26-7706).
  - For AIX, HP-UX or Solaris management stations, see the minimum requirements listed in the appropriate chapters in this document.

Software requirements

The following software distributions must be the specified versions:

SUSE LINUX Enterprise Server 9

- **Version:** RC5
- **Kernel:** 2.6.5 – 7.97

Emulex HBA driver and Application Kit

- lpfcdd v2.10g driver (included with SLES 9 installation CD)
- Emulex v2.10g Application Kit

Red Hat Enterprise Linux system requirements

This section lists the minimum hardware and software requirements for a POWER-based host running RHEL 3 (update 4) on a DS4300 Turbo, DS4400, or DS4500 storage subsystem that is managed by DS4000 Storage Manager.

Host hardware requirements

The following hardware is required at minimum:

Host: Any IBM @server pSeries or POWER server with 64-bit PowerPC architecture.

Software requirements

The following software must be at the specified versions, or later. Check the readme file at the following Web site for the most up-to-date version levels.

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

At the Web site, click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the resulting download files matrix, the links to the firmware downloads also provide the readme files.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux

- Version 3, Update 4
- Kernel 2.4.21-27.EL

Emulex tool kit and HBA driver

- lpfc v7.1.14 (included with kernel)
- ioctl kit (Helper Module: lpfc_2.4_ioctl.module_kit — 1.0.13–1.tar.gz)
- Emulex v7.1.14 Application Kit (ElxLinuxApps — 2.0a20-7.1.1.14-1.tar)

IBM Storage Manager RDAC MPP driver (for failover capability)

Version 09.00.A5.06

IBM Storage Manager software packages

- SMruntime-LINUX-09.10.A5.02-1.ppc64.rpm
- SMclient-LINUX-09.10.G5.02-1.noarch.rpm
- SMutil-LINUX-09.10.A5.03-1.ppc64.rpm
- SMagent-LINUX-09.10.A5.03-1.ppc64.rpm

Restrictions

Before you begin working with DS4000 Storage Manager, read the list of restrictions for your operating system:

- "SUSE Enterprise Linux Server (SLES 9) restrictions"
- "Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL 3) restrictions" on page 138

SUSE Enterprise Linux Server (SLES 9) restrictions

The following restrictions apply to POWER-based SLES 9 host configurations:

SAN and connectivity restrictions

- SLES 9 hosts can support up to two host bus adapter (HBA) per controller. You can configure one HBA to each mini-hub on the DS4000 controller. Each HBA-to-controller relationship must reside in a separate zone.
- Direct-attach configurations are restricted to single-initiator configurations only. You can only make one connection to each minihub on a DS4000 storage server.

Note: DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not have minihubs.

- Single-switch configurations are allowed, but each HBA and DS4000 controller combination must be in a separate SAN zone.
- Other storage devices, such as tape devices or other disk storage, must be connected through separate HBAs and SAN zones.
- Clustering is not currently supported.

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

Partitioning restrictions

- The maximum number of partitions per SLES 9 host, per DS4000 storage server, is four.
- If you have more than one HBA/controller pair, all logical drives must be mapped to a SLES 9 host group. For more information, see “Storage Partitioning premium feature” on page 24.
- On each partition, you must map a LUN 0.
- On each controller, you must configure at least one partition with an ID between 0 and 31 that is not a UTM or access logical drive.

For more information about Storage Partitioning, see “Storage Partitioning premium feature” on page 24.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL 3) restrictions

The following restrictions apply to POWER-based RHEL 3 host configurations.

Note: The restrictions apply to both single-path and multi-path RHEL 3 configurations, except as noted.

SAN and connectivity restrictions

- RHEL 3 hosts can support the following number of host bus adapters (HBAs):
  - **Single-path:** Single-path configurations can support up to two HBAs per controller. You can configure one HBA to each mini-hub on the DS4000 controller. Each HBA-to-controller relationship must reside in a separate zone and a separate partition.
  - **Multi-path:** Multi-path configurations can support two HBAs per partition, and one partition per host, per DS4000 storage server.
- Direct-attached single-path configurations are restricted to single-initiator configurations only. You can only make one connection to each minihub on a DS4000 storage server.

  Note: DS4300 Turbo storage servers do not have minihubs.
- Single-switch configurations are allowed, but each HBA and DS4000 controller combination must be in a separate SAN zone.
- Other storage devices, such as tape devices or other disk storage, must be connected through separate HBAs and SAN zones.
- Clustering is not currently supported.

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

Linux RDAC restrictions

- Auto volume transfer/auto-disk transfer (AVT/ADT) is managed by the Linux RDAC driver. To avoid contention, you must disable AVT/ADT by selecting the `LNXCL` host type instead of the `Linux` host type when you define your host groups. (The `Linux` host type automatically enables AVT/ADT; the `LNXCL` host type does not.)

Partitioning restrictions

- The maximum number of partitions per RHEL 3 host, per DS4000 storage server, is as follows:
  - **Single-path:** Four partitions
  - **Multi-path:** One partition
- Map the host type as follows:
  - **Single-path:** All logical drives in single-path configurations must be mapped as host type `Linux` (AVT is enabled in this host type).
  - **Multi-path:** All logical drives in multi-path configurations must be mapped as host type `LNXCL` (AVT is disabled in this host type).
- The Linux SCSI layer does not support skipped (sparse) LUNs. If the mapped LUNs are not contiguous, the Linux kernel does not scan any LUNs that occur after the skipped LUN, so the remaining LUNs are not available to the host server. Therefore, always map the LUNs using consecutive numbers, starting with LUN 0. For example, map LUNs to numbers 0; 1; 2; 3; 4; 5; and so on, without skipping any numbers.
- On each partition, you must map a LUN 0.
- On each controller, you must configure at least one partition with an ID between 0 and 31 that is not a UTM or access logical drive.

For more information about Storage Partitioning, see “Storage Partitioning premium feature” on page 24.

Interoperability restrictions

- Dynamic volume expansion (DVE) is not currently supported.
- **Important:** Do not attach DS4000 devices before the first time you boot the host.

Downloading the HBA driver and utility packages

This section contains the following procedures:

- “Downloading the SLES 9 HBA driver and utility packages”
- “Downloading the RHEL 3 HBA driver utility packages” on page 140

Downloading the SLES 9 HBA driver and utility packages

Download the following packages from the Emulex Web site:

www.emulex.com/ts/docoem/framibm.htm

	Compressed package filename	Uncompressed filename	Description
Application package	lpfcapp-2.10-1.ppc64.tgz	lputil	Monitors HBAs and facilitates downloading of HBA firmware

	Compressed package filename	Uncompressed filename	Description
Driver package	lpfcdriver-2.10g.tgz	lpfc driver	Compiles changes in the configuration file (/etc/lpfc.conf)

For each package, type the following command to uncompress the files:

```
# tar -zxvf package_name.tgz
```

Note: Use the **lputil** utility to check current HBA firmware levels or to download firmware.

Downloading the RHEL 3 HBA driver utility packages

The Emulex Helper Module and Application Kit are not included with the RHEL 3 kernel. You need to download them, as described in this section.

Note: The Emulex HBA driver is included with the RHEL 3 kernel.

Complete the following steps to download and install the Emulex HBA Kits.

1. Download the following packages from the Emulex Web site:

   www.emulex.com/ts/docoem/framibm.htm

Description	Compressed package filename
Emulex Helper Module	lpfc_2.4_ioctl_module_kit-1.0.13-1.tar.gz
Emulex Application Kit	ElxLinuxApps-2.0a20-7.1.14-1.tar

2. Type the following command to uncompress the Emulex Helper Module:

```
# tar -zxvf lpfc_2.4_ioctl_module_kit-1.0.13-1.tar.gz
```

   Result: The uncompressed package file is put into a new directory.

3. Type the following commands to install the module:

```
# cd lpfc_2.4_ioctl_module_kit-1.0.13-1
# ioctl-install
```

4. Type the following command to uncompress the Emulex Application Kit:

```
# tar -xvf ElxLinuxApps-2.0a20-7.1.14-1.tar
```

   Result: The package file is uncompressed.

5. Type the following command to install the kit:

```
# ./install
```

   Important: HBAnyware starts automatically when you install the Emulex Application Kit. Because HBAnyware impedes the removal of the lpfcdfc file from the modules stack when using **insmod**, you must stop HBAnyware by using the **stop hbanyware** or **uninstall**

commands at these times. For more information, see the readme.txt file that accompanies the Application Kit files.

Result: The following files and directories are installed:

- enterprise_kitfiles/
- enterprise_kitfiles/hbaapi_2.0.f.tgz (loads HBAnyware)
- enterprise_kitfiles/lputil_16a10.tgz
- enterprise_kitfiles/EmlxApps300a15.tgz
- enterprise_kitfiles/lpfcutil_2.4_lib_kit-1.0.13-1.tgz
- install
- uninstall
- README.txt
- README_SSC.txt

Note: Use the **lputil** utility to check current HBA firmware levels or to download firmware.

Installing DS4000 Storage Manager and utilities

The DS4000 Storage Manager client software and utilities are not currently available for POWER-based SLES 9 hosts.

Important: To manage DS4000 storage subsystems with your POWER-based SLES 9 host, you must install the Storage Manager client software (SMclient) on an AIX 5L, Solaris, HP-UX, Windows, i386 processor-based Linux, or POWER-based RHEL 3 server, and use that server as your storage management station.

- For information about installing DS4000 Storage Manager on an AIX, Solaris, or HP-UX management station, see the appropriate installation chapter in this document:
  - Chapter 2, “Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems,” on page 27
  - Chapter 3, “Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems,” on page 69
  - Chapter 4, “Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems,” on page 91
- For information about installing DS4000 Storage Manager on a Windows or i386 processor-based Linux management station, see *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Installation and Support Guide for Intel-based Operating System Environments* (GC26-7649).
- For information about installing DS4000 Storage Manager on a POWER-based RHEL 3 management station, see the next section, “Installing Storage Manager on a RHEL 3 host.”

Installing Storage Manager on a RHEL 3 host

This section provides the following information:

- “Prerequisites for installation” on page 142
- “Storage Manager installation procedures” on page 143

Important: When you boot the host the first time, you must not have any DS4000 devices attached.

Prerequisites for installation

After you install RHEL 3 on your host, and before you begin to install the Storage Manager software and configure your subsystems, you must complete the following tasks:

- "Modifying the configuration file"
- "Rebuilding the ramdisk"
- "Downloading the RHEL 3 HBA driver utility packages" on page 140

Modifying the configuration file: Complete the following steps to modify the configuration file (/etc/modules.conf):

1. On your RHEL 3 host, type the following command to view the configuration file:

```
# view /etc/modules.conf
```

2. In the file, verify that the lpfc device driver is listed *after* all the other scsi device drivers. If it is not, change the listing order and the scsi_hostadapter number so that the lpfc device driver is listed last, as in the following example:

```
# view /etc/modules.conf
alias eth0 e100
alias eth1 e100
alias eth2 e100
alias scsi_hostadapter sym53c8xx
alias scsi_hostadapter1 lpfc
```

   Important: If you do not complete this step, and the lpfc module is listed before the internal disk module, the DS4000 devices will be discovered first. Name slippage of the boot disk will occur.

3. Add the following lines to the configuration file:

```
options scsi_mod max_scsi_luns=255
options lpfc lpfc_nodev_tmo=60 lpfc_lun_queue_depth=xx lpfc_inq_pqb_filter=0x01
```

   Explanation of new lines:

   - `scsi_mod max_scsi_luns=255` — This line is required so that the host can read more than one device on each storage server
   - `lpfc lpfc_nodev_tmo=60` — The setting is not adjustable. 60 is the required setting.
   - `lpfc_lun_queue_depth=xx` The setting is adjustable. The default is 30.
   - `lpfc_inq_pqb_filter=0x01` Use this setting if needed. The filter parameter fixes a known SCSI midlayer problem in some distributions. Use this setting if you find duplicate LUN 0's in /proc/scsi/scsi, per attached DS4000.

After you finish updating the configuration file, continue to the next procedure, "Rebuilding the ramdisk."

Rebuilding the ramdisk: After you modify the configuration file, complete the following steps to rebuild the ramdisk:

1. Update the modules.dep file by typing the following command:

```
# depmod -a
```

2. Type the following commands:

```
# cd /boot
# mkinitrd -v maxscsi.initrd-2.4.21-27.EL.img 2.4.21-27.EL
```

   where *maxscsi* is an arbitrary name and *2.4.21-27.EL* is the current kernel version.

3. Edit the /etc/yaboot.conf file by adding the following lines:

```
image=/vmlinux-2.4.21-27.EL
   label=max-linux
   read-only
   initrd=/maxscsi.initrd-2.4.21-27.EL.img
   append="root=LABEL=/"
```

   where *maxscsi* is the name you used in step 2 and *2.4.21-27.EL* is the current kernel version.

   Important: If you do not complete this step, the outdated initrd space will be installed when you reboot.

4. Reboot.

Storage Manager installation procedures

Use the following procedures, in the order listed, to install the DS4000 Storage Manager software on a POWER-based RHEL 3 storage management station.

Install the Storage Manager software in the following order.

1. “Steps for installing SMruntime software” on page 144
2. “Steps for installing SMclient software” on page 144
3. “Steps for installing SMutil” on page 144
4. “Steps for installing SMagent (optional)” on page 144

Note: SMclient is dependent on SMruntime, which is a Java compiler for SMclient and must be installed first.

Prerequisites: Before installing the software, ensure that the following conditions are met.

- The RHEL 3 host on which you are installing SMruntime meets the minimum hardware and software requirements described in “Hardware, firmware and system requirements” on page 133.
- The Graphical Interface X Configuration is installed and configured. If this was not completed at Linux installation, use the following X Configuration Tool to configure it now:

  ```
  redhat-config-xfree86
  ```

- The DS4000 Storage Manager files have been downloaded to a directory on the host.

  Note: If you do not have the files, you can find them at the following Web site:

  www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

  Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the resulting download files matrix, the links to the firmware downloads also provide the readme files for Storage Manager.

Steps for installing SMruntime software: Modify the following commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the installation process.

1. Install SMruntime by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -ihv SMruntime-LINUX-09.10.G5.02-1.noarch.rpm
```

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
 # rpm -qa | grep SMruntime
```

Steps for installing SMclient software: Modify the following commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the client installation process.

1. Install SMclient by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -ihv SMclient-LINUX-09.10.G5.02-1.noarch.rpm
```

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -qa |grep SMclient
```

Result: The verification process shows the package name and version.

After completing the installation of the client software, you can launch the SMclient on the host by typing the following command:

```
# /opt/IBM_FAStT/SMclient
```

Result: The Storage Manager Enterprise Management window opens.

Note: If the Enterprise Management window does not open, verify that the Storage Manager software packages listed in the installation procedures are installed without error, and that the X Graphical Interface is configured and running on the server. If the verification process returns an error, contact your support representative.

Steps for installing SMutil: Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the installation process.

1. Install SMutil by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -ihv SMutil-LINUX-09.10.A5.03-1.ppc64.rpm
```

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -qa |grep SMutil
```

Result: The verification process shows the package name and version.

Steps for installing SMagent (optional): SMagent is required for in-band management only. It is not required for out-of-band management.

Note: SMagent is not supported with Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx.

Modify the commands as needed for your installation. No restart is required during the installation process.

1. Install SMagent by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -ihv SMagent-LINUX-09.10.A5.03-1.ppc64.rpm
```

2. Verify that the installation was successful by typing the following command:

```
# rpm -qa |grep SMagent
```

Result: The verification process shows the package name and version.

Configuring storage subsystems

Before you can configure storage subsystems, the subsystem must be physically configured for direct management using Ethernet connections from the management station to each controller. Also, SMclient must be installed on the management station before you can configure the subsystem.

Notes:

1. See “Setting up IP addresses for DS4000 storage controllers” on page 20 for information about assigning initial IP addresses to the controllers.
2. If you are using a RHEL 3 host that is a headless server, you can configure DS4000 Storage Manager by remote vnc connection or by using SMclient on a different management station.
3. If you are using a SLES 9 host, you cannot install DS4000 Storage Manager client software on the host. Complete the DS4000 Storage Manager procedures in this section using SMclient on a different storage management station, as described in “Installing DS4000 Storage Manager” on page 73.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Adding storage subsystems to SMclient”
- “Storage Partitioning: Defining a host group” on page 151

Adding storage subsystems to SMclient

After the disk subsystem is configured on the network, perform the following steps to add storage subsystems to DS4000 SMclient.

Note: The SMclient is not available for SLES 9, so this section includes instructions for starting the SMclient on other types of management stations. SMclient is available for RHEL 3, but if you prefer, you can use a different type of management station to manage RHEL 3 storage subsystems.

1. Start SMclient on the management station that will manage the new storage subsystem, as follows:
   - **Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL 3) host management station:**

     Type the following command:

```
# /opt/IBM_FAStT/SMclient
```

   - **Windows management station** (for SLES 9 host):

     Select **Start —> Programs —> IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 9 Client**.

- **AIX management station** (for SLES 9 host):
  Type the following command:

```
# /usr/SMclient/SMclient
```

- **HP-UX or Solaris management station** (for SLES 9 host):
  Type the following command:

```
# SMclient
```

The Enterprise Management window opens.

2. Complete the following steps to add the storage subsystems to the SMclient:
   a. In the Enterprise Management window, click **Edit —> Add Storage Subsystem**.
   b. In the Add Storage Subsystem window, type the IP address of the first controller in the storage subsystem and click **Add**.
   c. Type the IP address of the second controller and click **Add**, and then click **Close**. The name of the storage subsystem displays in the Enterprise Management window.
3. Double-click the name of the storage subsystem to open its Subsystem Management window.

Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM

The procedures in this section describe how to download and install DS4000 controller firmware and NVSRAM.

Overview

Read the information in the following sections before you begin the download procedures:

- "Using concurrent download"
- "Upgrading controller firmware and NVSRAM"
- "Using traditional or staged download"

Using concurrent download: Depending on your system's current firmware version, you might be able to use *concurrent download*. Concurrent download is a method of downloading firmware to the controllers that does not require you to stop I/O to the controllers during the process.

Using traditional or staged download: There are two methods for downloading the firmware to the controllers:

- "Traditional download"
- "Staged download"

Traditional download: The traditional download process takes significantly longer and must be done in one phase, rather than in two phases as with the staged controller firmware download. Therefore the preferred method of controller firmware download is the staged controller firmware download.

Staged download: With staged firmware download, the download process occurs in two distinct phases: firmware transfer and firmware activation. You can perform the time-consuming task of loading the firmware online so that it is functionally transparent to the application. You can then defer the activation of the loaded firmware to a convenient time.

Some reasons for activating firmware files at a later time include the following:

- **Time of day** - Activating can take a long time, so you might want to wait until I/O loads are lighter because the controllers will go offline briefly to activate the new firmware.
- **Type of package** - You might want to test the new firmware package on one storage subsystem before activating it on other storage subsystems.
- **Multiple controllers** - You can download controller firmware from the storage management software to all storage subsystem controllers for later activation.

Notes:

1. You cannot use staged download to upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to version 6.1x.xx.xx. You can only use staged download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
2. Staged controller firmware download is not supported on DS4400 storage servers.

Important: Do not perform other storage management tasks, such as creating or deleting logical drives, reconstructing arrays, and so on, while downloading the DS4000 storage server controller firmware. It is recommended that you close all storage management sessions (except for the session that you use to upgrade the firmware) to the DS4000 storage server that you plan to update.

Preparing for firmware or NVSRAM download

To prepare for download, review and complete all of the steps in this section before you start the download procedures.

Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM: Versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are provided with this product might be later releases than those described in this document.

To check the firmware and NVSRAM versions that are currently installed on your system, complete the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window displays.
2. In the Storage Subsystem Profile window, click the Controllers tab to view the current versions of firmware and NVSRAM.
3. Click **Close** to close the Storage Subsystem Profile window.
4. To find whether the versions of firmware and NVSRAM that are currently on your storage subsystem are the latest versions, see the readme file at the following Web site:

   www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

   Click the link for your storage server.

   When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for Linux on POWER and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for Linux on POWER.

   The latest versions are listed in the readme file.
5. If you find that you do not have the latest versions of the firmware and NVSRAM, click the **Back** button on your browser to return to the previous page.

From there, you can download the correct versions to the host by clicking the appropriate link that is listed in the IBM DS4000 Controller Firmware matrix.

Save the storage subsystem configuration: Saving the storage subsystem configuration to a script file is necessary in order to restore the configuration in the event of a catastrophic failure.

Attention: Do not use this option if the storage subsystem is undergoing an operation that changes any configuration settings. (If any logical drive listed in the Logical View of the Subsystem Management window has a clock icon, then a configuration change is occurring, and you must wait to save the configuration.)

You can also save the storage subsystem profile, by selecting **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** in the Subsystem Management window.

Save the storage subsystem configuration by completing the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> Configuration —> Save**. The Save Configuration window displays.
2. In the Save Configuration window, select the elements of the configuration that you want to save, and click **Yes**. A save dialog displays.
3. In the save dialog, specify a name for the script file and select its location.

   Notes:

   - The .cfg extension is used by default for the script file if you do not specify a file extension.
   - Do not store your DS4000 Storage Server configuration script file in the same location as the logical drives that are defined on your DS4000 Storage Server. If you do, and the logical drives fail during the subsequent migration, you will lose data.
4. Click **Save**. The Configuration Saved window displays.
5. Review the information in the Configuration Saved window, then click **OK** to return to the Subsystem Management window.

Determine whether you need to stop I/O: If you do not have the correct firmware levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.

Ensure that concurrent download is supported with your system's current firmware versions, using the information that is listed in Table 28.

Table 28. Minimum firmware versions for concurrent download (Linux on POWER)

DS4000 storage server:	Storage Manager controller firmware version:
DS4300:	05.40.07.xx
DS4400/DS4500:	05.40.06.xx
All other DS4000 storage servers:	05.30.xx.xx, 05.40.xx.xx, 06.1x.xx.xx

Attention: You cannot upgrade Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.4x.xx.xx to Storage Manager controller firmware version 6.1x.xx.xx using concurrent download. For example:

- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 6.1x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 6.1x.xx.xx firmware.
- You can only use concurrent download if the Storage Manager controller firmware version is already 5.4x.xx.xx, and you are downloading another version of 5.4x.xx.xx firmware.

Steps for upgrading the controller firmware

Complete the following steps to install a new firmware version on the controllers:

1. Download the correct version of the firmware from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 147. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware and device driver levels to determine whether you need to stop I/O, using the information that is listed in Table 28 on page 148.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the firmware.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller Firmware**. The Download Firmware window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the firmware file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. If you want to perform a staged firmware download, select the check box next to ″Transfer files but don't activate them (activate later).″ If you want to perform a traditional firmware download, do not select the check box, and the firmware will load immediately.
7. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
8. Click **Yes** to start the download.
9. Close the Subsystem Management window and then reopen it to complete the firmware update.
10. Verify that the firmware was successfully installed.

Steps for upgrading the NVSRAM

Complete the following steps to install a new version of NVSRAM on the controllers. NVSRAM will be activated immediately.

1. Download the correct NVSRAM version from the Web site that is listed in "Check current versions of firmware and NVSRAM" on page 147. Place the file in a designated directory on the host system.
2. Check your system's current firmware and device driver levels to determine whether you need to stop I/O before upgrading the NVSRAM, using the information that is listed in Table 28 on page 148.

   Attention: If you do not have the correct firmware and device driver levels for concurrent download, you *must* stop I/O to the controllers before you upgrade the NVSRAM.
3. Ensure that the array is in an Optimal state. If it is not, resolve the issue before continuing to the next step.
4. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Controller NVSRAM**. The Download NVSRAM window displays.
5. Click **Browse** to select the NVSRAM file that you previously downloaded to a directory on the host.
6. Click **OK**. The Confirm Download window displays.
7. Click **Yes** to start the download.
8. Verify that the NVSRAM was successfully installed.

Creating direct-attached and SAN-attached configurations

DS4000 Storage Manager supports IBM DS4000 Fibre Channel Storage Servers in direct-attached POWER-based Linux host configurations or in a SAN environment through switches in POWER-based Linux host configurations.

Creating a direct-attached configuration

The following types of direct-attached configurations are supported:

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9

- One to four POWER-based SLES 9 host servers in single-path configurations can be connected to each DS4000 storage server.
- Single HBA configurations are supported

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3

- One to four POWER-based RHEL 3 host servers, in single-path configurations, can be connected to each DS4000 storage server.
- One or two RHEL 3 servers, in multi-path configurations, can be connected to each DS4000 storage server.
- Single and dual HBA configurations are supported.

Note: Two-server, multi-path DS4400 or DS4500 configurations require four host-side minihubs, each with exactly one Fibre Channel connection from each HBA to a minihub.

Complete the following steps to set up a direct-attached configuration:

1. Ensure that no external hubs are being used.
2. Connect the HBAs to each controller or minihub port of the DS4000 storage server.
3. Configure and verify the configuration.

Creating a SAN-attached configuration

Before you begin: To create a SAN-attached configuration, you must ensure that:

- Multiple Fibre Channel HBAs within the same server cannot “see” the same DS4000 controller port.
- The IBM Fibre Channel HBAs in the host system are isolated from each other if they are connected to the same switch that is connected to the same DS4000 controller port.
- Each Fibre Channel HBA on each host, and controller port on each DS4000 server, must be in its own fabric zone, if they are connecting through a single Fibre Channel switch.

  Note: Single HBA configurations are allowed. If you have a single HBA in a SAN-attached configuration, the controller must be Fibre Channel connected to the HBA through a switch, and both controllers must be within the same SAN zone as the HBA.

  Attention: Having a single HBA configuration can lead to loss of access data in the event of a path failure.

Complete the following steps to set up a SAN-attached configuration:

1. Connect the HBAs to the switch or switches.
2. Connect the DS4000 storage subsystems to the switch or switches.
3. Set the required zones on the Fibre Channel switch or switches, if applicable.

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, "Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment," on page 209.

4. Configure, then verify the configuration by logging into the switch to view the system.

Storage Partitioning: Defining a host group

A *host group* is an entity in the Storage Partitioning topology that defines a logical collection of host computers that require shared access to one or more logical drives. You can grant individual hosts in a defined host group access to storage partitions, independently of the host group. You can make logical drive-to-LUN mappings to the host group or to an individual host in a host group.

If you have purchased a Storage Partitioning premium feature, ensure that the premium feature is enabled. For more information about storage partitioning, see "Storage Partitioning premium feature" on page 24.

Complete the procedure that is appropriate for your operating system.

- "Defining a SLES 9 host group"
- "Defining a RHEL 3 host group" on page 152

Defining a SLES 9 host group

Create the host group at the storage subsystem level. Do not create host groups at the default group level.

Exception: If you are running a DS4000 configuration without partitioning enabled, you can use the default host group.

Steps for defining a SLES 9 host group:

1. Click the **Mappings View** tab on the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section of the Mappings window, highlight the name of the storage subsystem, and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host Group**.

   Note: Make sure that the storage subsystem is highlighted in the left panel of the Subsystem Management window. Do not highlight Undefined Mappings.
3. Type the name of the new host group (for example, `Linux SLES 9`). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
4. Highlight the new host group and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host**.
5. Type the name of the host to which the storage subsystem is attached (for example, `linuxserver`). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
6. Highlight the host that you just added, then right-click and select **Define Host Port**.
7. Select the host port identifier for the first HBA (for example, 10:00:00:00:c9:24:0c:3f). If you do not see the identifier that you are looking for, see the note at the end of this procedure.
8. Change the host type to **Linux** (do not select Linux Cluster). Click **Add**.

   Important: Failure to change the host type from the default to Linux might cause undesired results.

Note: The host port identifier is the WWPN of the host bus adapter. If you do not see the one you want in the host port identifier drop-down menu, check the following:

Fibre Channel cable
You might not be using the correct cable. Verify that you are using the correct Fibre Channel cable, and that it is connected properly.

Switch zoning
If you are connected to a switch, ensure that it is zoned correctly. For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

lpfc module
You might not have initialized the lpfc module. Type the following command for the server that does not display in the menu:

```
# modprobe lpfcdfc
```

If you still do not see the correct WWPNs, try one of the methods listed in “Viewing HBA properties” on page 166.

Steps for verifying that the host ports match the host:

1. Type the following command to view the HBAs:

```
lsdev | grep lpfcdd
```

   A list that contains all the HBAs that are in the system is displayed.
2. In the list, identify the host number of the HBA that is connected to the DS4000.
3. Type the following command to view the WWPNs of the HBA and connected DS4000 controllers:

```
cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/host#
```

   where *host#* is the host number of the HBA.
4. Verify that the network address number matches the host port number that displays in host partition table of the DS4000 SMclient.
5. Repeat this procedure to verify the other host ports.

Defining a RHEL 3 host group

Before you begin: Note the following information.

- Create the host group at the storage subsystem level. Do not create host groups at the default group level.

  Exception: If you are running a DS4000 configuration without partitioning enabled, you can use the default host group.
- Auto volume transfer/auto-disk transfer (AVT/ADT) is managed by the Linux RDAC driver. To avoid contention, you must disable AVT/ADT by selecting the `LNXCL` host type instead of the `Linux` host type when you define your host groups, as described in the procedure. (The `Linux` host type automatically enables AVT/ADT; the `LNXCL` host type does not.)

Steps for defining a RHEL 3 host group:

1. Click the **Mappings View** tab on the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section of the Mappings window, highlight the name of the storage subsystem, and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host Group**.

Note: Make sure that the storage subsystem is highlighted in the left panel of the Subsystem Management window. Do not highlight Undefined Mappings.

3. Type the name of the new host group (for example, `RHEL 3`). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
4. Highlight the new host group and click **Mappings —> Define —> Host**.
5. Type the name of the host to which the storage subsystem is attached (for example, `redhatserver`). Click **Add**, and then click **Close**.
6. Highlight the host that you just added, then right-click and select **Define Host Port**.
7. Select the host port identifier for the first HBA (for example, 10:00:00:00:c9:24:0c:3f). If you do not see the identifier that you are looking for, see the note at the end of this procedure.
8. Change the host type, as follows, according to your configuration:
   - **Single-path:** Select **Linux**.
   - **Multi-path:** Select **LNXCL**.

   Click **Add**.

   Important: Failure to change the host type from the default might cause undesired results.
9. If you are configuring additional HBAs to this partition, choose the host port for the next HBA and click **Add**, and then click **Close**.

   Note: You must configure at least two HBAs if you are using RDAC.

Important:: The host port identifier is the worldwide port name (WWPN) of the host bus adapter. If you do not see the one you want in the host port identifier drop-down menu, check the following:

Fibre Channel cable
You might not be using the correct cable. Verify that you are using the correct Fibre Channel cable, and that it is connected properly.

Switch zoning
If you are connected to a switch, ensure that it is zoned correctly.

Note: For more information about zoning and enabling zones, see Appendix E, “Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment,” on page 209.

lpfc module
You might not have initialized the lpfc module. Type the following command for the server that does not display in the menu:

```
# modprobe lpfc
```

Steps for verifying that the host ports match the host:

1. Type the following command to view the HBAs:

```
# ls /proc/scsi/lpfc
```

Result: A list containing all of the HBAs discovered on the system is shown.

2. In the list, identify the host number of the HBA that is connected to the DS4000.
3. Type the following command to view the WWPNs of the HBA and connected DS4000 controllers:

```
cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/lpfc#
```

where *lpfc#* is the assigned HBA number.

Result: Information about the HBA displays, as shown in the following example. Note that the Portname value is equivalent to the WWPN:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/3
Emulex LightPulse FC SCSI 7.0.3
Emulex LightPulse LP9802 2 Gigabit PCI Fibre Channel
 Adapter on PCI
bus 161 device 08 irq 137
SerialNum: 0000c930ae1e
Firmware Version: 1.00 (H2J1.00X5)
Hdw: 2003806d
VendorId: 0xf98010df
Portname: 10:00:00:00:c9:30:ae:1e   Nodename: 20:00:0
0:00:c9:30:ae:1e

Link Up - Ready:
   PortID 0x11400
   Fabric
   Current speed 2G
```

4. Verify that the WWPN matches the Host Port Identifier number assigned to the host port in the host partition table of the DS4000 SMclient.
5. Repeat this procedure to verify the second host port, if configuring for RDAC.

Mapping LUNS to a storage partition

This section contains the following procedures:

- "Mapping LUNs to a new partition"
- "Adding LUNs to an existing partition" on page 155

Important:

1. It is recommended that you always map the LUNs using consecutive numbers, starting with LUN 0. For example, map LUNs to numbers 0; 1; 2; 3; 4; 5; and so on, without skipping any numbers.
2. It is recommended that you do not map at the host group level. If you do, every attached host can see all the LUNs.
3. On each partition, you must map a LUN 0.

Mapping LUNs to a new partition

When mapping LUNs for the first time to a newly created partition, complete the following steps to map LUNs to the partition.

Before you begin: Read "DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning" on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.

2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Storage Partitioning**. The Define Storage Partitioning window opens.
3. In the Define Storage Partitioning window, select **Host**, then click **Next**.
4. Select the logical drive by name, on the right side of the window.
5. Accept the default LUN ID, or change it, then click **Add**.
6. Repeat step 5 for each LUN that you want to map to the partition.

Adding LUNs to an existing partition

When adding LUNs to an existing partition, complete the following steps to map the new LUNs to the partition.

Before you begin: Read "DS4000 Storage Manager performance planning" on page 21 for information about planning the number of LUNs to map to each partition.

1. Select the Mappings view of the Subsystem Management window.
2. In the Topology section, right-click the host on which you want to map LUNs, and select **Define Additional Mappings**. The Define Additional Mapping window opens.
3. In the Define Additional Mapping window, select the following options, and then click **Add**:
   - Host group or host
   - Logical unit number (LUN)(0-255)
   - Logical drive

Repeat these steps for each LUN that you want to add to the partition.

Configuring the host bus adapter drivers

Complete the procedure that is appropriate for your operating system:

- "Configuring the SLES 9 host bus adapter drivers"
- "Configuring the RHEL 3 host bus adapter drivers" on page 156

Configuring the SLES 9 host bus adapter drivers

Each Emulex HBA that is used with POWER-based SLES 9 hosts needs two separate HBA and utility driver packages. The standard packages are loaded onto the system with the SLES 9 download.

Use the **lsmod** command to find out whether the HBA device driver (lpfcdd module) is on the system.

Note: If you do not intend to modify the driver, you can use the standard packages. Otherwise, configure the packages using the procedures in this section.

Configuring HBA drivers: Complete the following steps to set up the HBA drivers:

1. Create the SAN switch connections.
2. Type the following command to start the HBA driver:

```
# modprobe lpfcdd
```

The driver searches for all HBAs, and their connections, that are on the system.

3. Type the following command to view the **lpfcdd** output:

```
# lsscsi
```

   A list of HBAs and their connections displays, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:~ # lsscsi
[0:0:5:0]    disk    IBM      ST336607LC       C50H  /dev/sda
[0:255:255:255]no dev  IBM      570B001          0150  -
[1:0:0:0]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdb
[1:0:0:1]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdc
[1:0:0:2]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdd
[1:0:0:3]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sde
[1:0:0:4]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdf
[1:0:0:5]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdg
[1:0:0:6]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdh
[1:0:0:7]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdi
[1:0:0:8]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdj
[1:0:0:9]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdk
[1:0:1:0]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdl
[1:0:1:1]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdm
[1:0:1:2]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdn
[1:0:1:3]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdo
[1:0:1:4]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdp
```

   Note: [1:0:0:0] = [*HBA* : *scsi_bus* : *scsi_id* : *LUN*]

   Column 4 shows the associated DS4000 type, and column 6 shows the Linux operating system device identifier.

4. Type the following command to view the properties of each HBA (such as firmware version, controller WWPNs, and connection speed):

```
# cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/HBA#
```

   Repeat for each HBA. (See an example of the **cat** command output in “Viewing HBA properties” on page 166.)

When you are done, check the Mappings View of the Subsystem Management window to verify that the LUNs that are detected by the HBAs are correct.

Configuring the RHEL 3 host bus adapter drivers

Complete the following steps to set up the HBA drivers on a RHEL 3 host.

1. Type the following command to verify that the lpfc and lpfcdfc modules are installed and working:

```
# lsmod
```

   Result: A list of installed modules displays.

2. Verify that entries for the lpfc and lpfcdfc modules are included in the **lsmod** list.
3. Create the SAN switch connections.
4. Use one of the following methods to probe for the HBA:
   - **Method 1: rmmod, modprobe**

Type the following commands:

With Emulex Kit installed	Without Emulex Kit installed
# rmmod lpfcdfc # rmmod lpfc # modprobe lpfcdfc	# rmmod lpfc # modprobe lpfc

Result: The driver searches for all HBAs, and their connections, that are on the system.

- **Method 2: lun_scan**

  Type the following command:

```
# cd /usr/sbin/lpfc
# lun_scan hba#
```

to rescan a particular HBA, or

```
# cd /usr/sbin/lpfc
# lun_scan all
```

to rescan all the HBAs that are on the system.

Result: The driver searches for the HBA or HBAs, and the HBA connections.

5. Type the following command to view the properties of each HBA (such as firmware version, controller WWPNs, and connection speed):

```
# cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/HBA#
```

Repeat for each HBA. (See an example of the **cat** command output in “Viewing HBA properties” on page 166.)

6. Type the following command to display all assigned LUNs:

```
# SMdevices
```

Result: A list of information about all assigned LUNs is displayed. This information includes the assigned host device name (/dev/sd..) and the following DS4000 storage subsystem information about the owning storage subsystem, as shown by the SMclient:

- Name
- Assigned Logical drive name
- Assigned LUN ID
- Preferred controller owner, and whether that controller is currently controlling the logical drive

The output of **SMdevices** command looks similar to the following example:

```
# SMdevices
IBM FAStT Storage Manager Devices, Version 09.12.A5.00
Built Fri Jan 14 16:42:15 CST 2005
(C) Copyright International Business Machines Corporation, 2004 Licensed Material -
Program Property of IBM.  All rights reserved.

  /dev/sdh (/dev/sg10) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-5-0A, LUN 4, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc300000044412e2dbf>,
 Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdd (/dev/sg6) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-5-1A, LUN 0, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f13ec00000016412e2e86>,
Preferred Path (Controller-B): In Use]
  /dev/sde (/dev/sg7) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-0-0A, LUN 1, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc30000003c412e2d59>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdf (/dev/sg8) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-1-0A, LUN 2, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc30000003e412e2d79>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdg (/dev/sg9) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-3-0A, LUN 3, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f13ec00000012412e2e4c>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
```

When you are done, check the Mappings View of the Subsystem Management window to verify that the LUNs that are detected by the HBAs are correct.

Installing the RDAC Multipath Proxy driver (RHEL 3 only)

This section describes how to install the RDAC driver for a multi-path RHEL 3 configuration.

Important:

1. Multi-path configurations are not supported on SLES 9 hosts. If you are creating a SLES 9 configuration, or a RHEL 3 single-path configuration, skip this section and proceed to “Performing initial device identification” on page 160.
2. Before you install RDAC, make sure that the partitions and LUNs are configured and assigned.

Complete the following steps to install RDAC:

1. Download the following RDAC driver package from the IBM DS4000 support Web site:

   rdac-LINUX-09.00.A5.06-source.tar.gz
2. Create a directory on the host and download the RDAC driver package to that directory.
3. Uncompress the file by typing the following command:

```
# tar -zxvf rdac-LINUX-09.00.A5.06-source.tar.gz
```

   Result: A directory called **linuxrdac** is created.
4. Open the Readme.txt that is included in the linuxrdac directory.
5. In the Readme.txt, find the instructions for building and installing the driver and complete the steps, which include rebooting the server.

   Note: Make sure you reboot the server before you proceed to step 6 on page 159.

6. Type the following command to list the installed modules:

```
# lsmod
```

7. Verify that entries for the following modules are included in the **lsmod** list:
   - scsi_mod
   - sd_mod
   - sg
   - lpfc
   - mpp_Vhba
   - mpp_Upper
   - lpfcdfc (if ioctl module is installed)

   Note: If you do not see the mpp_Vhba module, the likely cause is that the server was rebooted before the LUNs were assigned, so the mpp_Vhba module was not installed. If this is the case, assign the LUNs now, reboot the server, and then repeat step 7.
8. Type the following command to verify the driver version:

```
# mppUtil -V
```

   Result: The Linux multipath driver version displays.
9. Type the following command to verify that devices are configured with the RDAC driver

```
# ls -1R /proc/mpp
```

   Result: An output similar to the following example displays:

```
# ls -1R /proc/mpp
/proc/mpp:
total 0
dr-xr-xr-x    4 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 DS4100-sys1
crwxrwxrwx    1 root     root     254,   0 Oct 24 02:56 mppVBusNode

/proc/mpp/ DS4100-sys1:
total 0
dr-xr-xr-x    3 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 controllerA
dr-xr-xr-x    3 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 controllerB
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun0
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun1
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun2
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun3
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun4
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 virtualLun5

/proc/mpp/ DS4100-sys1/controllerA:
total 0
dr-xr-xr-x    2 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 lpfc_h6c0t2

/proc/mpp/ DS4100-sys1/controllerA/lpfc_h6c0t2:
total 0
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN0
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN1
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN2
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN3
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN4
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN5

/proc/mpp/ DS4100-sys1/controllerB:
total 0
dr-xr-xr-x    2 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 lpfc_h5c0t0

/proc/mpp/ DS4100-sys1/controllerB/lpfc_h5c0t0:
total 0
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN0
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN1
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN2
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN3
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN4
-rw-r--r--    1 root     root            0 Oct 24 02:56 LUN5
```

Note: After you install the RDAC driver, the following commands and man pages are available:

- mppUtil
- mppBusRescan
- mppUpdate

Performing initial device identification

Complete the procedure that is appropriate for your operating system:

- "Performing initial device identification on SLES 9 hosts"
- "Performing initial device identification on RHEL 3 hosts" on page 163

Performing initial device identification on SLES 9 hosts

Identify the devices by using one of the following methods:

Device identification: Method 1

1. Type the following commands:

```
# rmmod lpfcdd

# modprobe lpfcdd

# lsscsi
```

A list of HBAs and their connections displays, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:~ # lsscsi
[0:0:5:0]    disk    IBM      ST336607LC       C50H  /dev/sda
[0:255:255:255]no dev  IBM      570B001          0150  -
[1:0:0:0]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdb
[1:0:0:1]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdc
[1:0:0:2]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdd
[1:0:0:3]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sde
[1:0:0:4]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdf
[1:0:0:5]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdg
[1:0:0:6]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdh
[1:0:0:7]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdi
[1:0:0:8]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdj
[1:0:0:9]    disk    IBM      1742-900         0520  /dev/sdk
[1:0:1:0]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdl
[1:0:1:1]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdm
[1:0:1:2]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdn
[1:0:1:3]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdo
[1:0:1:4]    disk    IBM      1742             0520  /dev/sdp
```

Note: [1:0:0:0] = [*HBA* : *scsi_bus* : *scsi_id* : *LUN*]

Column 4 shows the associated DS4000 type, and column 6 shows the Linux OS device number.

2. Type the following commands:

```
# cd /proc/scsi/lpfc

# ls
```

A list of HBAs is displayed, as shown in the following example:

```
. .. 10 11 7 8 9
```

3. For each HBA in the directory, type the following command:

```
# cat hba#
```

where *hba#* is an HBA in the directory. The HBA's properties display, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:/proc/scsi/lpfc # cat 11
Emulex LightPulse FC SCSI 2.10f
HBA: Emulex LightPulse LP9002 (2 Gigabit) on PCI bus 2a device 08 irq 58
SerialNum: 1C21908CE5
Firmware Version: 3.82A1 (C2D3.82A1)
Hdw: 2002606d
VendorId: 0xf90010df
Portname: 10:00:00:00:c9:2d:29:f1   Nodename: 20:00:00:00:c9:2d:29:f1

Link Up - Ready:
   PortID 0x10200
   Fabric
   Current speed 2G

lpfc4t00 DID 010400 WWPN 20:02:00:a0:b8:13:0f:d3 WWNN 20:02:00:a0:b8:13:0f:d2
lpfc4t01 DID 010500 WWPN 20:0a:00:a0:b8:0f:33:79 WWNN 20:0a:00:a0:b8:0f:33:78
lpfc4t02 DID 010600 WWPN 20:08:00:a0:b8:12:aa:53 WWNN 20:08:00:a0:b8:12:aa:52
lpfc4t03 DID 010700 WWPN 20:04:00:a0:b8:12:db:f1 WWNN 20:04:00:a0:b8:12:db:f0
lpfc4t04 DID 010a00 WWPN 20:10:00:a0:b8:06:64:1e WWNN 20:10:00:a0:b8:06:64:1d
hostname:/proc/scsi/lpfc #
```

4. Check the information to verify connectivity with the storage controllers.

Device identification: Method 2

1. Type the following commands:

```
# cd /sys/class/scsi_host/

# ls
```

A list of hosts is displayed, as shown in the following example:

```
. .. host0 host1 host10 host11 host7 host8 host9
```

2. Type the following commands:

```
# cd host#

# ls
```

where *host#* is the number of a host in the list. The next list of files displays, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:/sys/class/scsi_host/host1 # ls
.   cmd_per_lun  host_busy  scan          unchecked_isa_dma
..  device       proc_name  sg_tablesize  unique_id

hostname:/sys/class/scsi_host/host1 # cd device
hostname:/sys/class/scsi_host/host1/device # ls
.        1:0:0:8   1:0:1:4   1:0:2:12  1:0:3:1   1:0:4:0   1:0:4:6
..       1:0:0:9   1:0:1:5   1:0:2:2   1:0:3:10  1:0:4:1   1:0:4:7
1:0:0:0  1:0:1:0   1:0:1:6   1:0:2:3   1:0:3:2   1:0:4:10  1:0:4:8
1:0:0:1  1:0:1:1   1:0:1:7   1:0:2:4   1:0:3:3   1:0:4:11  1:0:4:9
1:0:0:2  1:0:1:10  1:0:1:8   1:0:2:5   1:0:3:4   1:0:4:12  detach_state
1:0:0:3  1:0:1:11  1:0:1:9   1:0:2:6   1:0:3:5   1:0:4:13
1:0:0:4  1:0:1:12  1:0:2:0   1:0:2:7   1:0:3:6   1:0:4:2
1:0:0:5  1:0:1:13  1:0:2:1   1:0:2:8   1:0:3:7   1:0:4:3
1:0:0:6  1:0:1:2   1:0:2:10  1:0:2:9   1:0:3:8   1:0:4:4
1:0:0:7  1:0:1:3   1:0:2:11  1:0:3:0   1:0:3:9   1:0:4:5
```

3. Compare the LUNs that are displayed in the **lsscsi** output to the LUNs that are displayed in the Mappings View of the Subsystem Management window.
4. If the number of LUNs displayed in the Subsystem Management window is different from the number of LUNs displayed in the **lsscsi** output, the most likely cause is that the LUNs are not mapped properly. In this case, ensure that LUN 0 is mapped to the host, and that the LUNs are mapped in consecutive order.

Device identification: Method 3

Complete the following steps to view HBA and DS4000 controllers' port connectivity using the switch interface:

1. Use the browser to log into the switch.
2. In the switch view, click **Admin**.
3. When prompted, log in as `root`. The Admin window opens.
4. In the Admin window, select **View**.

A report showing port status, zones and connections is displayed.

Performing initial device identification on RHEL 3 hosts

Type the following command to view the LUNs that the host can detect:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/scsi
```

The resulting output depends on whether you have RDAC installed.

Device identification without RDAC installed

If you do not have the RDAC driver installed, you see output similar to the following example:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/scsi

Attached devices:
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 01 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: DROM00203        Rev: 7R41
  Type:   CD-ROM                           ANSI SCSI revision: 02
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 08 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: ST336607LC       Rev: C50F
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 02
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 03
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 04
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 05
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

Note: If two paths are configured, you will see each LUN two times — once on each configured HBA path.

If the output shows that no LUNs are assigned to the host, reboot the host or type the following sequence of commands to probe the scsi bus for the added devices:

```
# rmmod lpfcdfc
# rmmod lpfc
# modprobe lpfcdfc
```

Then, type the following command again:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/scsi
```

Device identification with RDAC installed

If you have the RDAC driver installed, you see output similar to the following sample output. In the output, there are five LUNs from a DS4500 storage server (Model: 1742-900), assigned to two HBAs:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/scsi
Attached devices:
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 01 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: DROM00203        Rev: 7R41
  Type:   CD-ROM                           ANSI SCSI revision: 02
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 08 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: ST336607LC       Rev: C50F
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 02
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 03
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 04
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi5 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi5 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi5 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 02
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi5 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 03
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi5 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 04
  Vendor: IBM      Model: 1742-900         Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi11 Channel: 00 Id: 04 Lun: 00
  Vendor: IBM      Model: VirtualDisk      Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi11 Channel: 00 Id: 04 Lun: 01
  Vendor: IBM      Model: VirtualDisk      Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi11 Channel: 00 Id: 04 Lun: 02
  Vendor: IBM      Model: VirtualDisk      Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi11 Channel: 00 Id: 04 Lun: 03
  Vendor: IBM      Model: VirtualDisk      Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi11 Channel: 00 Id: 04 Lun: 04
  Vendor: IBM      Model: VirtualDisk      Rev: 0520
  Type:   Direct-Access                    ANSI SCSI revision: 03
```

Notes:

1. Each LUN is displayed on both of its configured paths.
2. The **VirtualDisk** is the RDAC's logical disk. There is one VirtualDisk for each LUN, regardless of number of paths available.

3. If you do not see any VirtualDisks in the output, the most likely cause is that the mpp_Vhba module did not get installed. (This happens if the RDAC driver was installed before any LUNs were configured.) Use the **lsmod** command to verify whether the mpp_Vhba module is installed. If it is missing from the list of modules, make sure that the LUNs are configured, then reboot the host.

Performing common maintenance tasks

See the information in this section that is appropriate for your operating system:

- "Performing SLES 9 maintenance tasks"
- "Performing RHEL 3 maintenance tasks" on page 169

Performing SLES 9 maintenance tasks

This section describes some common system administration tasks.

- "Viewing HBA properties"
- "Checking LUN size" on page 168

Viewing HBA properties

You can use one of the following methods to view HBA properties, such as WWPNs and firmware levels.

Viewing HBA properties, Method 1:

1. Type the following commands:

```
# cd /proc/scsi/lpfc

# ls
```

   A list of HBAs displays, as shown in the following example:

```
. .. 10 11 7 8 9
```

2. Type the following command:

```
# cat hba#
```

   where *hba#* is the number of an HBA in the list. The HBA's properties display, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:/proc/scsi/lpfc # cat 11
Emulex LightPulse FC SCSI 2.10f
HBA: Emulex LightPulse LP9002 (2 Gigabit) on PCI bus 2a device 08 irq 58
SerialNum: 1C21908CE5
Firmware Version: 3.82A1 (C2D3.82A1)
Hdw: 2002606d
VendorId: 0xf90010df
Portname: 10:00:00:00:c9:2d:29:f1   Nodename: 20:00:00:00:c9:2d:29:f1

Link Up - Ready:
   PortID 0x10200
   Fabric
   Current speed 2G

lpfc4t00 DID 010400 WWPN 20:02:00:a0:b8:13:0f:d3 WWNN 20:02:00:a0:b8:13:0f:d2
lpfc4t01 DID 010500 WWPN 20:0a:00:a0:b8:0f:33:79 WWNN 20:0a:00:a0:b8:0f:33:78
lpfc4t02 DID 010600 WWPN 20:08:00:a0:b8:12:aa:53 WWNN 20:08:00:a0:b8:12:aa:52
lpfc4t03 DID 010700 WWPN 20:04:00:a0:b8:12:db:f1 WWNN 20:04:00:a0:b8:12:db:f0
lpfc4t04 DID 010a00 WWPN 20:10:00:a0:b8:06:64:1e WWNN 20:10:00:a0:b8:06:64:1d
hostname:/proc/scsi/lpfc #
```

Viewing HBA properties, Method 2:

1. Type the following commands:

```
# cd /sys/class/scsi_host

# ls
```

   A list of files displays, as shown in the following example:

```
. .. host0 host1 host10 host11 host7 host8 host9
```

2. Type the following commands:

```
# cd host#

# ls
```

   where *host#* is the number of a host in the list. The next list of files displays, as shown in the following example:

```
.   cmd_per_lun  host_busy  scan          unchecked_isa_dma
..  device       proc_name  sg_tablesize  unique_id
```

3. Type the following commands:

```
# cd device

# ls
```

   A list of HBAs displays, as shown in the following example.

Note: [11:0:0:5] = [*HBA* : *scsi_bus* : *scsi_id* : *LUN*]

```
.          11:0:0:5   11:0:1:2  11:0:2:10  11:0:3:1   11:0:4:0   11:0:4:6
..         11:0:0:6   11:0:1:3  11:0:2:2   11:0:3:10  11:0:4:1   11:0:4:7
11:0:0:0   11:0:0:7   11:0:1:4  11:0:2:3   11:0:3:2   11:0:4:10  11:0:4:8
11:0:0:1   11:0:0:8   11:0:1:5  11:0:2:4   11:0:3:3   11:0:4:11  11:0:4:9
11:0:0:10  11:0:0:9   11:0:1:6  11:0:2:5   11:0:3:4   11:0:4:12  detach_state
11:0:0:11  11:0:1:0   11:0:1:7  11:0:2:6   11:0:3:5   11:0:4:13
11:0:0:12  11:0:1:1   11:0:1:8  11:0:2:7   11:0:3:6   11:0:4:2
11:0:0:2   11:0:1:10  11:0:1:9  11:0:2:8   11:0:3:7   11:0:4:3
11:0:0:3   11:0:1:11  11:0:2:0  11:0:2:9   11:0:3:8   11:0:4:4
11:0:0:4   11:0:1:12  11:0:2:1  11:0:3:0   11:0:3:9   11:0:4:5
```

Checking LUN size

Complete the following steps to check the size of a LUN:

1. From the device directory, type the **cat size** command, as shown in the following example:

```
hostname:/sys/class/scsi_host/host11/device/11:0:0:0/block # cat size
```

   Result: A number displays, as in the following example:

```
8388608
```

2. Multiply this number by 512 (bytes) to calculate the size of the LUN, as shown in the following example:

   ```
   8388608 * 512 = 4294967296 (~ 4GB)
   ```

   Result: The result of the calculation is the size of the LUN. In the example, the LUN size is approximately 4 GB.

Using dynamic capacity expansion and dynamic volume expansion

Dynamic volume expansion (DVE) increases the size of a logical drive. In order to perform a DVE, there must be free capacity available on the array. If there is not, you can first perform a dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) to increases the array's capacity by adding drives.

Performing a dynamic capacity expansion operation:

Before you begin: You can find more information about this procedure in the Storage Manager online help.

Complete the following steps to increase the capacity on the array by performing a DCE:

1. In the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window, right-click on an array and select **Add Free Capacity (Drives)**.
2. In the Add Free Capacity (Drives) window, select one or two available drives and click **Add**.

After you have ensured that there is sufficient free capacity within the array, you can perform a DVE operation, as described in the next topic.

Performing a dynamic volume expansion operation:

Before you begin: Ensure that there is available free capacity within the array. You can check free capacity availability using DS4000 Storage Manager, in the Logical/Physical view of the Subsystem Management window. If there is not enough free capacity, and extra drives are available, you can add one or more to the array by performing a dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) operation before you perform the DVE operation.

You can find more information about this procedure in the Storage Manager online help.

Restrictions:

1. You cannot resize the logical drive while the logical drive group is activated in classic or enhanced concurrent mode.
2. You cannot resize the root logical drive group.

Complete the following steps to increase the size of a logical drive by performing a DVE:

1. Stop I/O to the logical drive whose size you want to increase.
2. Unmount the logical drive, if it is mounted.
3. From the Logical/Physical window of the Subsystem Management window, right-click the logical drive and select **Increase Capacity**. The Increase Logical Drive Capacity — Additional Instructions window opens.
4. Read the additional instructions and click **OK**. The Increase Logical Drive Capacity window opens.
5. Type the amount that you want to increase the logical drive, and click **OK**.

   You see a clock icon on every logical drive within the array. You must wait for the process to complete before you can begin any host intervention.

   Tip: If the storage server is busy, the process might take several hours to complete.
6. On the host, rescan the logical drive by typing the following command from the device directory:

```
# echo 1 rescan
```

7. Check the size of the logical drive using the steps that are described in “Checking LUN size” on page 168.
8. Remount the logical drive.

Performing RHEL 3 maintenance tasks

This section describes some common system administration tasks.

Using the SMdevices utility to find information about LUNs

SMutil features an excellent utility, **SMdevices**, which you can use to map the host-assigned device name for each LUN back to its corresponding DS4000 storage subsystem device.

In the **SMdevices** output, you can view the following DS4000 storage subsystem information, as it is shown on SMclient.

Note: The examples in the list refer to the sample **SMdevices** output.

- Host assigned name (`/dev/sdh`)

- DS4000 storage subsystem name (DS4500_Storage_Server-A)
- Logical drive name Raid-5-0A
- LUN ID (LUN 4)
- Preferred controller owner, and whether that controller is currently controlling the logical drive

The following example shows a sample **SMdevices** output for the subsystem **DS4500_Storage_Server-A**:

```
# SMdevices
IBM FAStT Storage Manager Devices, Version 09.12.A5.00
Built Fri Jan 14 16:42:15 CST 2005
(C) Copyright International Business Machines Corporation, 2004 Licensed Material -
Program Property of IBM.  All rights reserved.

  /dev/sdh (/dev/sg10) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-5-0A, LUN 4, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc300000044412e2dbf>,
 Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdd (/dev/sg6) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-5-1A, LUN 0, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f13ec00000016412e2e86>,
Preferred Path (Controller-B): In Use]
  /dev/sde (/dev/sg7) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-0-0A, LUN 1, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc30000003c412e2d59>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdf (/dev/sg8) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-1-0A, LUN 2, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f0fc30000003e412e2d79>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
  /dev/sdg (/dev/sg9) [Storage Subsystem DS4500_Storage_Server-A,
Logical Drive Raid-3-0A, LUN 3, Logical Drive ID <600a0b80000f13ec00000012412e2e4c>,
Preferred Path (Controller-A): In Use]
```

Viewing queue depth

To view the queue depth of each LUN, type the following command:

```
# cat /proc/scsi/sg/device_hdr devices
```

Note: If RDAC is installed, the queue depth number that is displayed in the output is not the same as the host setting for queue depth, because the RDAC driver takes two queues for each LUN. For example, in the following sample output, the queue depth of LUNs mapped to host 11 is set to 10; because RDAC is installed, the output shows a queue depth of 8.

```
#cat /proc/scsi/sg/device_hdr devices
host    chan    id      lun     type    opens   qdepth  busy    online
0         0       1       0       5       0       2       0       1
0         0       8       0       0       3       8       0       1
11        0       4       0       0       0       8       0       1
11        0       4       1       0       0       8       0       1
11        0       4       2       0       0       8       0       1
11        0       4       3       0       0       8       0       1
11        0       4       4       0       0       8       0       1
```

Chapter 6. Completing the software configuration

After you finish installing DS4000 Storage Manager, you must complete your configuration. This chapter describes how to complete the DS4000 Storage Manager configuration by performing the following tasks:

- "Configuring storage subsystems"
- "Configuring alert notifications" on page 175
- "Renaming storage subsystems" on page 176
- "Creating a storage subsystem profile" on page 176
- "Performing other storage subsystem management tasks" on page 176

Attention: For cluster configurations, complete all applicable configuration procedures for each storage subsystem *before* installing the storage management software on a second host or cluster server.

Overview of heterogeneous host configurations

The heterogeneous hosts feature enables hosts that are running different operating systems to access a single storage subsystem. DS4000 Storage Manager 9.1 supports up to 64 storage partitions, which enables a multiple host-type subsystem to share storage capacity, consolidate storage, and reduce storage management costs.

Host computers can run on completely different operating systems (for example, AIX and Solaris) or variants of the same operating system (for example, Solaris running in a cluster environment). When you define a host type in the Define New Host Port window, the heterogeneous hosts feature enables the controllers in the storage subsystem to tailor their behavior (such as LUN reporting and error conditions) to the needs of the operating system or variant of the host that is sending the information.

Important: When you define host types in a heterogeneous environment, you must set each host type to its appropriate operating system so that the firmware on each controller can respond correctly for the appropriate operating system.

Before you begin setting up the configuration for you heterogeneous host, see the *IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide*.

Configuring storage subsystems

Use the following procedures to start the DS4000 SMclient from either the storage management station or from a host that is acting as a storage management station (a host with the client software installed). Use the SMclient to discover and configure each attached storage subsystem.

Performing an initial automatic discovery of storage subsystems

Complete the following steps to begin an initial automatic discovery of all the attached hosts and storage subsystems:

1. If you are running the DS4000 SMclient from AIX, first change to the /SMclient directory and then type `SMclient`. (For more information about initial automatic discovery on AIX systems, see "Identifying devices on AIX hosts" on page 45.) If you are running the client software from Solaris 8 or 9, type `SMclient`.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

2. Click **Yes** to begin the initial automatic discovery.

   Note: It can take up to one minute for the Enterprise Management window to refresh after an initial automatic discovery. If you need to stop the automatic discovery operation for any reason, close the Enterprise Management window.

   When the initial automatic discovery is finished, all attached hosts and attached storage subsystems are displayed in the Enterprise Management window, as shown in Figure 13.

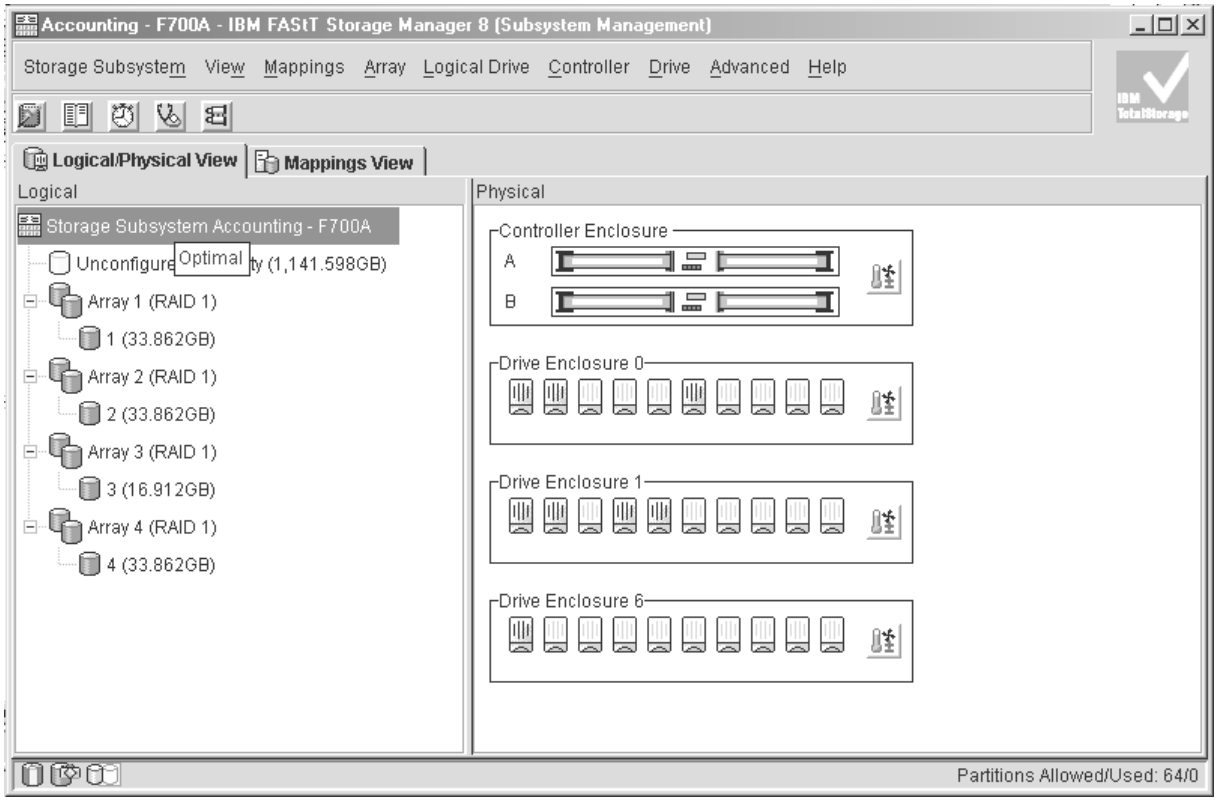


Figure 13. Enterprise Management window

3. Ensure that all of the attached hosts and storage subsystems are displayed as expected. If they are not, complete the following steps:
   a. Check the hardware and connections for possible problems (see the hardware documentation for specific procedures).
   b. See the Enterprise Management window help topic on discovering storage subsystems and take the appropriate action that is indicated.
   c. Ensure that the storage subsystem is on the local subnetwork. If it is not, click **Edit —> Add Storage Subsystem** to add it. See the Enterprise Management window help topic on adding devices.

      Note: Failure to add both controllers results in a partially-managed subsystem.

d. If a storage subsystem is duplicated in the device tree after an automatic discovery, remove the duplicate storage subsystem icon from the device tree by clicking **Edit —> Remove...** in the Enterprise Management window. Click **Yes** when the dialog window appears.

4. Ensure that the status of each storage subsystem is **Optimal**:
   - If any device shows a status of **Unresponsive**, remove the device from the management domain, and then add it again. See the Enterprise Management window help topic on removing and adding devices.
   - If the device still shows an unresponsive status, contact your IBM technical-support representative.
5. Go to "Configuring alert notifications" on page 175.

Creating logical drives from free or unconfigured capacity

Perform following steps to create logical drives from free or unconfigured capacity nodes in the Subsystem Management window.

1. In the Logical (left) panel of the Subsystem Management window, highlight either **Free Capacity** or **Unconfigured Capacity**.
2. Click **Logical Drive —> Create**.

   The Introduction (Create Logical Drive) window opens.

   Note: If the Storage Partition feature is enabled, a Default Host Type window might open on top of the Introduction (Create Logical Drive) window, that asks you to select a default host type for the logical drive or drives that you are going to be create. Select the appropriate host type from the pull-down list and click **OK** to close the Default Host Type window.

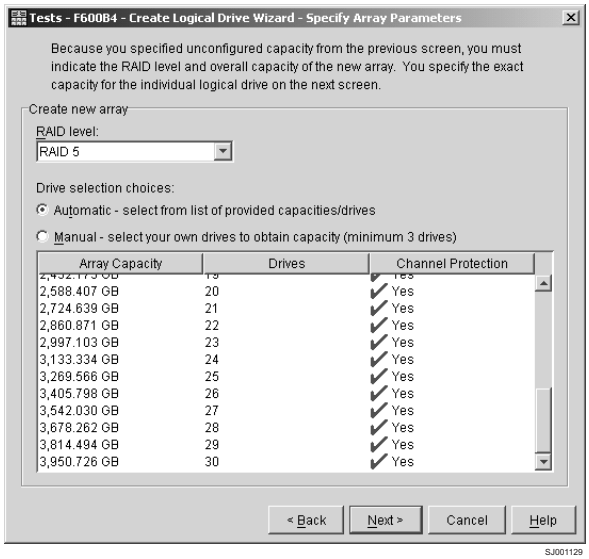


Figure 14. Create Logical Drive — Introduction window

3. The Introduction (Create Logical Drive) window shows the amount of free or unconfigured capacity available and provides a link for tips and examples on allocating capacity. Click **Next** to continue.
4. The Specify Array (Create Logical Drive) window opens to allow you to define the parameters for an array that you will create for the logical drive. In this window, specify the following array parameters:
   - RAID level: RAID-0, RAID-1, RAID-3 or RAID-5

- Drive selection choices: Select the number of drives that will be used for this array. You can either specify the number of drives in the array and let the storage subsystem make the selection of which optimal hard drives in the storage subsystem to use, or you can manually select which hard drives will form the array.

  Note: In manual mode, to select multiple drives, you can press and hold the **Ctrl** key and then use the mouse to select the desired hard drive or drives in the available unconfigured optimal hard drive list.

  Click **Next** to continue.
- A box opens stating that you have successfully set the parameters for creating an array. Click **OK** to continue. The Specify Capacity/Name (Create Logical Drive) window opens.

5. In the Specify Capacity/Name (Create Logical Drive) window, specify the following logical drive parameters for the logical drive you want to create:

   New logical drive capacity
   The new logical drive capacity can be either the entire unconfigured capacity in an array or a portion of the capacity.

   Units You can choose from GB, MB, and TB.

   Name The logical drive name must be unique in the storage subsystem.

   Advanced logical drive parameters
   You can create the logical drive either using the DS4000 Storage Server recommended settings or you can select your own customized I/O characteristics, controller ownership, and logical-drive-to-LUN mapping settings.

   If you choose to use the DS4000 Storage Server default settings, click the check box next to ″Use recommended settings,″ click **Next** then go to step 7. If you want to select your own customized settings, click the check box next to ″Customize settings (I/O characteristics and controller ownership),″ click **Next** then go to step 6.
6. The Customize Advanced Logical Drive Parameters (Create Logical Drive) window opens. In the Customize Advanced Logical Drive Parameters (Create Logical Drive) window, specify the following settings:
   - The appropriate I/O characteristics (the I/O characteristics type, segment size, and cache read-ahead multiplier)

     The I/O characteristics settings can be manually specified or automatically set based on the selection of one of the following expected logical drive usages: file system, database, or multimedia.
   - The preferred controller ownership

   Click **Next**.
7. The Specify Logical Drive-to-LUN Mapping (Create Logical Drive) window opens.

   In the Specify Logical Drive-to-LUN Mapping (Create Logical Drive) window, specify how you want the logical drive-to-LUN mapping to be mapped to the individual logical drive.

   The logical drive-to-LUN mapping preference can be one of the following two settings:

   Default mapping
   The Default mapping setting specifies that a LUN is automatically assigned to the logical drive using the next available LUN within the

default host group. This setting grants logical drive access to host groups or host computers that have no specific logical drive-to-LUN mappings (those that were designated by the default host group node in the Mappings view). If the Storage Partition feature is not enabled, you must specify the Default mapping setting.

Map later using the Mappings View
This setting specifies that you are not going to assign a LUN to the logical drive during creation. This setting enables you to define a specific logical drive-to-LUN mapping and create storage partitions using the Mappings Defined option. When you enable storage partitioning, specify this setting.

8. Click **Finish** to create the logical drive. The Create Logical Drive Wizard – Creation Successful window opens and states that the logical drive was successfully created.
9. If you do not want to create another logical drive, go to step 11. Otherwise, indicate in the Creation Successful (Create Logical Drive) window if you want to create the logical drive from the same array, if there is free capacity, or from a different array if there is no capacity in the array in which the logical drive was just created. Click **Yes** and go to step 10. If you do not want to create another logical drive, click **No** and continue with step11.
10. The Allocate Capacity (Create Logical Drive) window opens. Select if you want to create the new logical drive from free capacity on the same array, free capacity on a different array, or from unconfigured capacity (create a new array). Then continue with step 5 on page 174.
11. The Completed (Create Logical Drive) window opens. Click **OK**.
12. Register the logical drive with the operating system.

    After you create logical drives with automatic logical drive-to-LUN mappings, follow the appropriate instructions in the Installation and Support Guide for your operating system to enable the operating system to discover the new logical drive.

Configuring alert notifications

After you have added devices to the management domain, you should set up alert notification options to report critical events on the storage subsystems. The following alert notification options are available:

- Alert notifications are sent to a designated network management station (NMS) using simple network management protocol (SNMP) traps.
- Alert notifications are sent to a designated e-mail address. See the Enterprise Management window help for specific procedures. To send e-mail to IBM, contact your customer service representative.
- Alert notifications are sent to a designated alphanumeric pager when third-party software is used to convert e-mail messages. See the Enterprise Management window help for specific procedures.

For more information about notification options, see the *IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Concepts Guide*.

Complete the following steps to set up alert notifications using SNMP traps. You need to set up the designated management station only once.

1. Ensure that the installation CD is inserted in the CD-ROM drive on your designated NMS.

2. From the installation CD, copy the SM9.MIB file from the SM9mib directory to the NMS.
3. Follow the steps required by your NMS to compile the MIB. For details, contact your network administrator or see the documentation for the storage management product you are using.

Renaming storage subsystems

When you start the storage management software for the first time, the storage subsystems are unnamed. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> Rename**. Rename each storage subsystem from <unnamed> to a name that is appropriate for your network.

Creating a storage subsystem profile

Create a storage subsystem profile and save it in a safe place whenever you modify the arrays and logical drives in your storage server. This profile contains detailed controller information, including logical and physical disk configuration information. In the event of a catastrophic failure, you can use the storage subsystem profile to help recover the configuration.

Complete the following steps to create a storage subsystem profile:

1. In the Storage Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window opens.
2. Click **Save As**.
3. Type a file name for the storage subsystem profile and save it to a directory.

If you have a storage server with firmware 04.01.xx.xx or earlier, you must also perform a controller state capture in addition to saving the storage subsystem profile. To use the Capture State Information feature, upgrade your controller to firmware 04.01.02.34 or later.

Complete the following steps to create a storage subsystem profile by using the Capture State Information feature.

1. Click **Advanced —> Troubleshooting —> Capture State Information**. The State Capture window opens.
2. Click **Browse** to specify the file name for the state capture information.
3. Click **Start** to start the capture process.
4. Click **Cancel** to close the State Capture window when the capture is complete.

Performing other storage subsystem management tasks

You can also perform other storage subsystem management tasks at this time. To perform the following tasks and other storage subsystem management tasks, see the appropriate topics in the Subsystem Management window online help:

- Locate a storage subsystem
- View a storage subsystem profile
- Configure a storage subsystem password
- Create and manage arrays and array groups
- Use the performance monitor
- Create storage partitions (if Storage Partitioning is enabled on your system)
- Download drive firmware

If you are installing the storage management software in a cluster environment, repeat all applicable client software installation procedures for a second storage management station and for all applicable host software on a second host. See Chapter 2, “Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems,” on page 27, Chapter 3, “Installing and configuring storage management software on HP-UX host systems,” on page 69, Chapter 4, “Installing and configuring storage management software on Solaris host systems,” on page 91, or Chapter 5, “Installing and configuring storage management software on POWER-based Linux host systems,” on page 133 for installation instructions.

Chapter 7. DS4000 Storage Manager with high-availability cluster services

The high-availability clustering services provided by DS4000 Storage Manager allow application services to continue when a hardware or software failure occurs. This system protects you from software failures as well as from the failure of a CPU, disk, or LAN component. If a component fails, its redundant partner component takes over cluster services and coordinates the transfer between components.

This chapter provides the following information:

- "Using cluster services on HP-UX systems" on page 180
- "Using cluster services on Solaris systems" on page 180
- "Using cluster services on AIX systems" on page 181

Important: For the latest requirements and user information about using DS4000 Storage Manager with cluster services, see the readme file that is located in the DS4000 Installation CD for your host operating system. The most recent copy of the readme file, which supersedes the information in this document, is maintained at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the **Download** tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables on the resulting page, find the Storage Manager listing for your host operating system and click the link in the Current Version column. A page opens that contains a link to the Storage Manager readme file for your host operating system.

General information

You can use DS4000 Storage Manager with the following cluster services.

Operating System	High-Availability Cluster Service
AIX	HACMP 5.1 PSSP 3.4 with GPFS 1.5 PSSP 3.5 with GPFS 2.1
HP-UX	HP MC/Service Guard Version 11.12, 11.13, and 11.14
Solaris 8	VERITAS Cluster Server 3.5 or higher VERITAS Volume Manager 3.1, 3.2, 3.5 or higher VERITAS File System 3.5

Note: Clustering is not currently supported on Linux on POWER hosts with DS4000.

This document does not describe how to install or configure cluster services. Refer to documentation that is provided with your cluster service products for this information.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Note: When using storage partitioning in conjunction with a cluster solution, all partitions in the clusters must ″see″ the same storage. Therefore, logical drive mapping to cluster partitions must be done on the host group level.

Using cluster services on HP-UX systems

You can choose among many configurations when you set up clustering on an HP-UX system. A minimum configuration consists of two servers that are configured with both a primary and two standby LANs to establish a heartbeat LAN.

Provide Fibre Channel connections to the storage subsystem through two switches that provide the necessary redundant data path for the hosts. Ensure that each server has two HP Tachyon host bus adapters.

See Appendix A, “MC/Service Guard configuration details,” on page 191 for more information.

Using cluster services on Solaris systems

The following sections contain general hardware requirements and additional information about the cluster services.

General hardware requirements

Each Solaris system in the cluster requires the following hardware:

- At least three Ethernet ports:
  - Two for the private network connections
  - At least one for the public network connection
- Two Fibre Channel host bus adapters for connection to the storage subsystem
- A SCSI connection for operating system disks
- Each VERITAS Cluster Server system requires at least 128 MB of RAM and 35 MB of free disk space

System dependencies

This section provides information about VERITAS Volume Manager, RDAC IDs, and single points of failure.

VERITAS Volume Manager and Data Multipathing

If you are using RDAC as your failover driver, and you are using the VERITAS Volume Manager, you must disable Data Multipathing (DMP). Complete one of the following procedures, according to your version of VERITAS Volume Manager.

Note: If you are using the VERITAS Cluster Server, you must change the stack size parameters. Open the /etc/system file in the Vi text editor and make the following changes:

- Change the default value for `set lwp_default_stksize` to 0x8000
- Change the default value for `set rcpcmod:svc_default_stksize` to 0x8000

VERITAS Volume Manager 3.1 or earlier: For VERITAS Volume Manager 3.1 or earlier, you must disable DMP for all devices.

Complete the following steps:

1. Open the /etc/system file in the Vi text editor by typing the following command:

```
# vi /etc/system
```

2. Comment out the `forceload: drv/vxdmp` line.
3. Save and close the /etc/system file.

VERITAS Volume Manager 3.2 or later: For VERITAS Volume Manager 3.2 or later, you must disable DMP for DS4000 storage servers only.

Use option 17 and then option 5 of the submenu of the vxdiskadm utility to disable DMP for DS4000 storage servers. Other devices can use DMP.

RDAC IDs

Add up to eight additional IDs to the /etc/symsm/rmparams file. Complete the following steps to add them:

1. Open the /etc/symsm/rmparams file in the Vi text editor by typing the following command:

```
# vi /etc/symsm/rmparams
```

2. Modify the `Rdac_HotAddIDs` line as follows:

```
Rdac_HotAddIDs:0:1:2:3:4:5:6:7:8
```

3. Save and close the /etc/symsm/rmparams file.

Single points of failure

When setting up cluster services, it is important to eliminate single points of failure because a single point of failure makes a cluster only as strong as its weakest component. Set up the storage subsystem for shared storage; for example, all the nodes in the cluster must recognize the same storage and the host types must be set correctly.

Using cluster services on AIX systems

The following sections contain general hardware requirements and additional information about the cluster services.

For general information about HACMP, GPFS, and PSSP, see the IBM @server Cluster Information Center at the following Web site:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/clresctr/index.jsp

General hardware requirements

For hardware, software, firmware and RDAC requirements, see “AIX system requirements” on page 30.

For the most current information on AIX and device driver versions for DS4000, see the readme file posted at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your DS4000 storage server. When the page opens, click **Storage Manager v9.1**. Accept the license agreement, then click the **v9.1** link for IBM DS4000 Storage Manager for your operating system.

High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing

This section contains general requirements and usage notes for High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing (HACMP) support with DS4000 Storage Manager.

Software requirements

The following HACMP software requirements are in addition to the requirements that are specified in “AIX system requirements” on page 30:

Table 29. HACMP software requirements

AIX versions	HACMP version	Required HACMP APAR
AIX 5.1, 5.2, 5.3	HACMP 5.1	IY45695

For more information about software requirements, see the following Web site:

ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/fastt/fastt500/HACMP_config_info.pdf

Configuration limitations

The following limitations apply to HACMP configurations:

- Switched fabric connection only; no direct connection is allowed between the host nodes and DS4000.
- HACMP C-SPOC cannot be used to add a DS4000 disk to AIX using the *Add a Disk to the Cluster* facility.
- HACMP C-SPOC does not support enhanced concurrent mode volume groups.
- Single node quorum is not supported in a two-node GPFS cluster with DS4000 disks in the configuration.

Other HACMP usage notes

The following notations are specific to HACMP environments:

- HACMP clusters can support from two to 32 servers on each DS4000 partition. If you run this kind of environment, be sure to read and understand the AIX device drivers queue depth settings that are described in Chapter 2, “Installing and configuring storage management software on AIX host systems,” on page 27.
- You can attach non-clustered AIX hosts to a DS4000 that is running DS4000 Storage Manager and is attached to an HACMP 4.5 cluster. However, you must configure the non-clustered AIX hosts on separate host partitions on the DS4000.

Parallel System Support Programs and General Parallel File System

This section contains general requirements and usage notes for Parallel System Support Programs (PSSP) and General Parallel File System (GPFS) support with DS4000 Storage Manager.

Software requirements

The following combinations of PSSP and GPFS are supported:

Table 30. PSSP and GPFS software requirements

PSSP and GPFS versions	Required PSSP APARs
PSSP 3.5 with GPFS 2.1	**PSSP 3.5:** IY49062

Configuration limitations

The following limitations apply to PSSP and GPFS configurations:

- Direct connection is not allowed between the host node and a DS4000 storage server. Only switched fabric connection is allowed.
- RVSD clusters can support up to two IBM Virtual Shared Disk and RVSD servers for each DS4000 partition.
- Single node quorum is not supported in a dual-node GPFS cluster with DS4000 disks in the configuration.
- Heterogeneous configurations are not supported.

Other PSSP and GPFS usage notes

In GPFS file systems, the following DS4000 cache settings are supported:

- Read cache enabled or disabled
- Write cache enabled or disabled
- Cache mirroring enabled or disabled (depending upon the write cache mirroring setting)

The performance benefits of read or write caching depends on the application.

GPFS, PSSP, and HACMP cluster configuration diagrams

The diagrams in this section show both the preferred and failover paths from an HBA pair to a given volume or set of volumes.

A preferred path to a volume is determined when the volume is created and distributed across a DS4000 controller. The controller to which it is assigned determines which path is preferred or active for I/O transfer. Volumes can, and in most cases should, be assigned to both controllers, balancing the I/O load across HBAs and DS4000 controllers.

Figure 15 on page 184 shows a cluster configuration that contains a single DS4000 storage server, with one to four partitions.

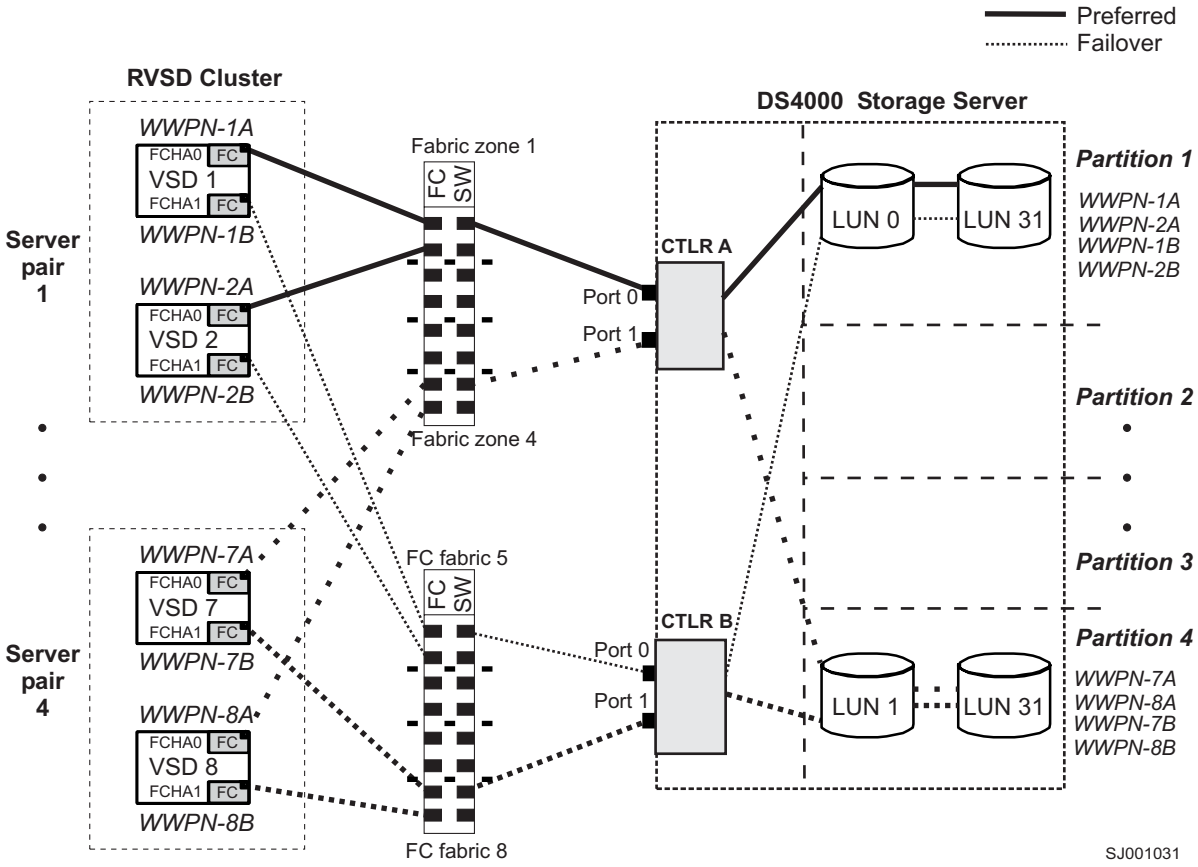


Figure 15. Cluster configuration with single DS4000 storage server — one to four partitions

Figure 16 on page 185 shows a cluster configuration that contains three DS4000 storage servers, with one partition on each storage server.

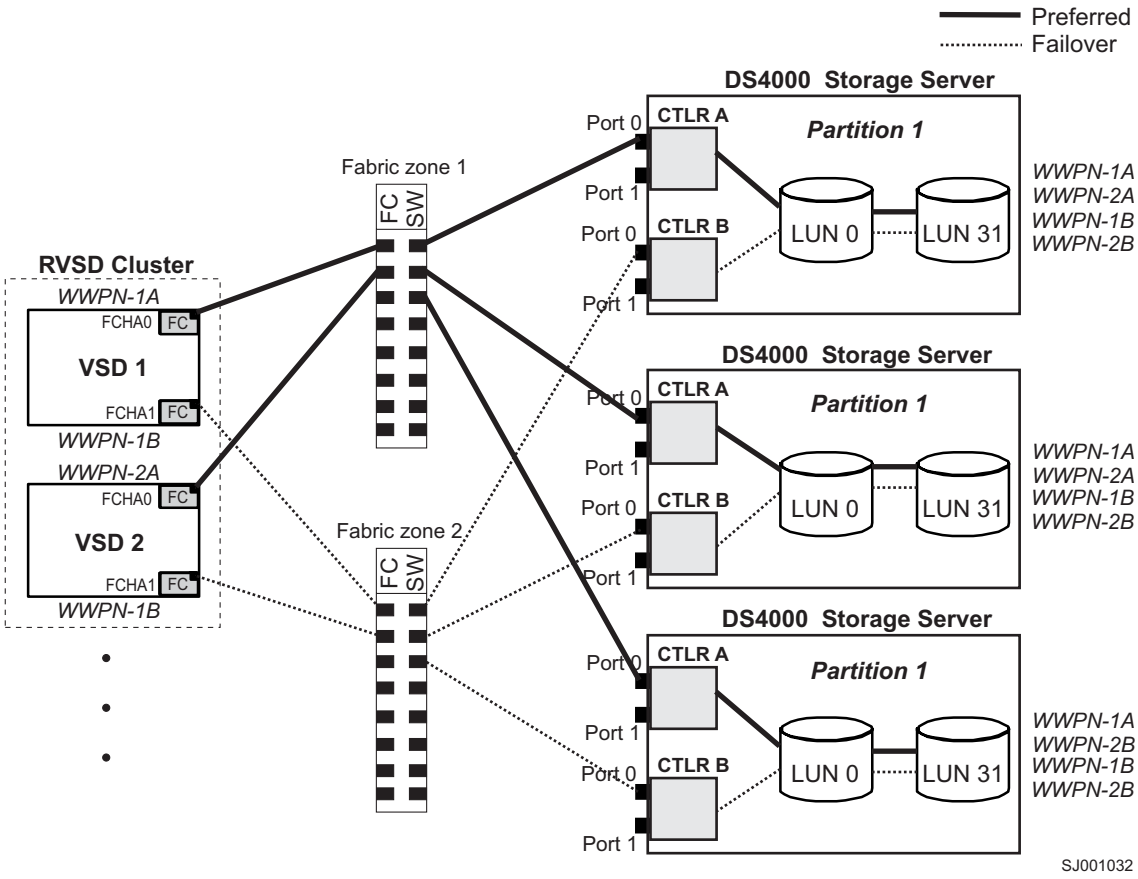


Figure 16. Cluster configuration with three DS4000 storage servers — one partition per DS4000

Figure 17 on page 186 shows a cluster configuration that contains four DS4000 storage servers, with one partition on each storage server.

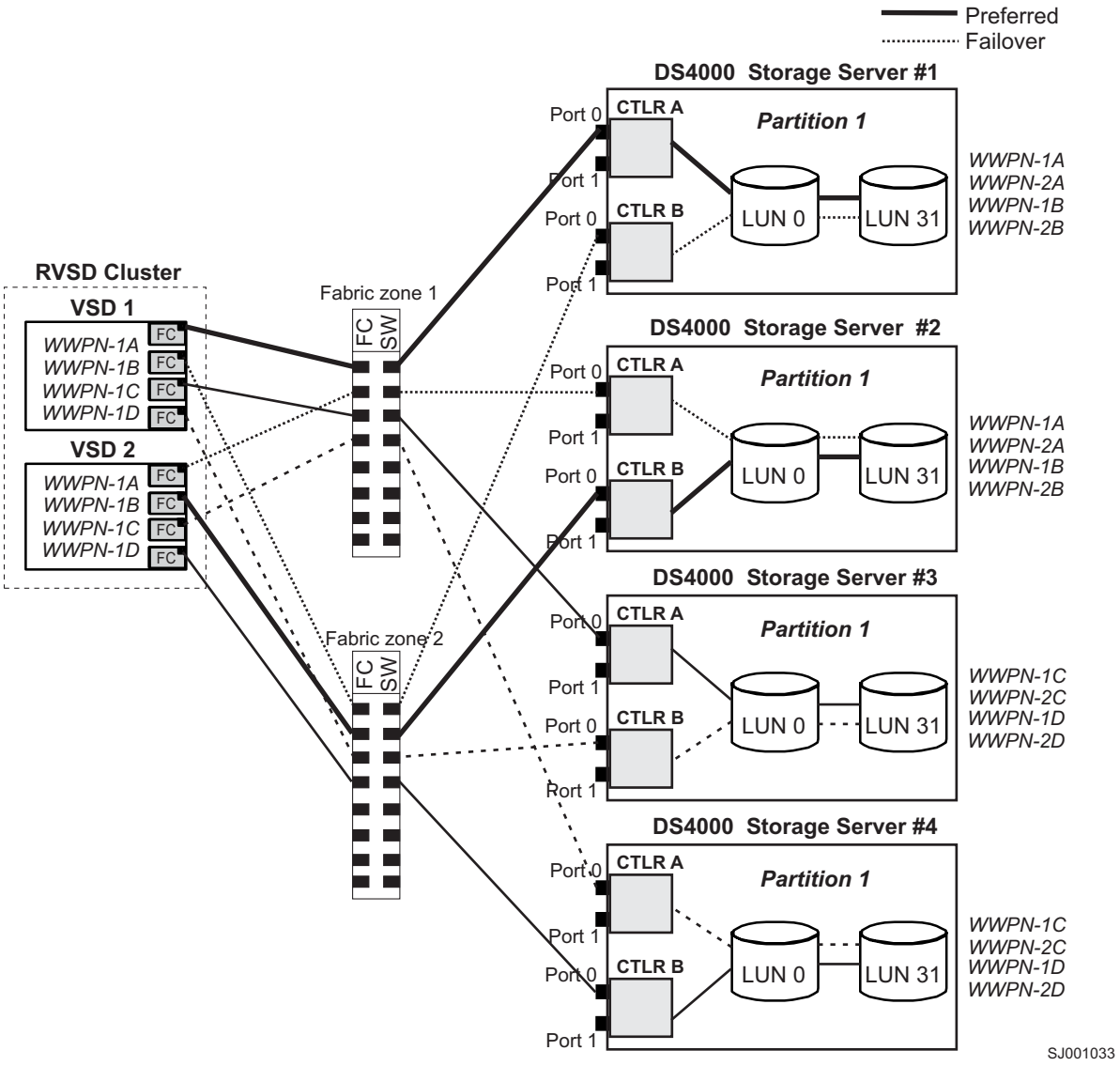


Figure 17. Cluster configuration with four DS4000 storage servers — one partition per DS4000

Figure 18 on page 187 shows a cluster configuration that contains two DS4000 storage servers, with two partitions on each storage server.

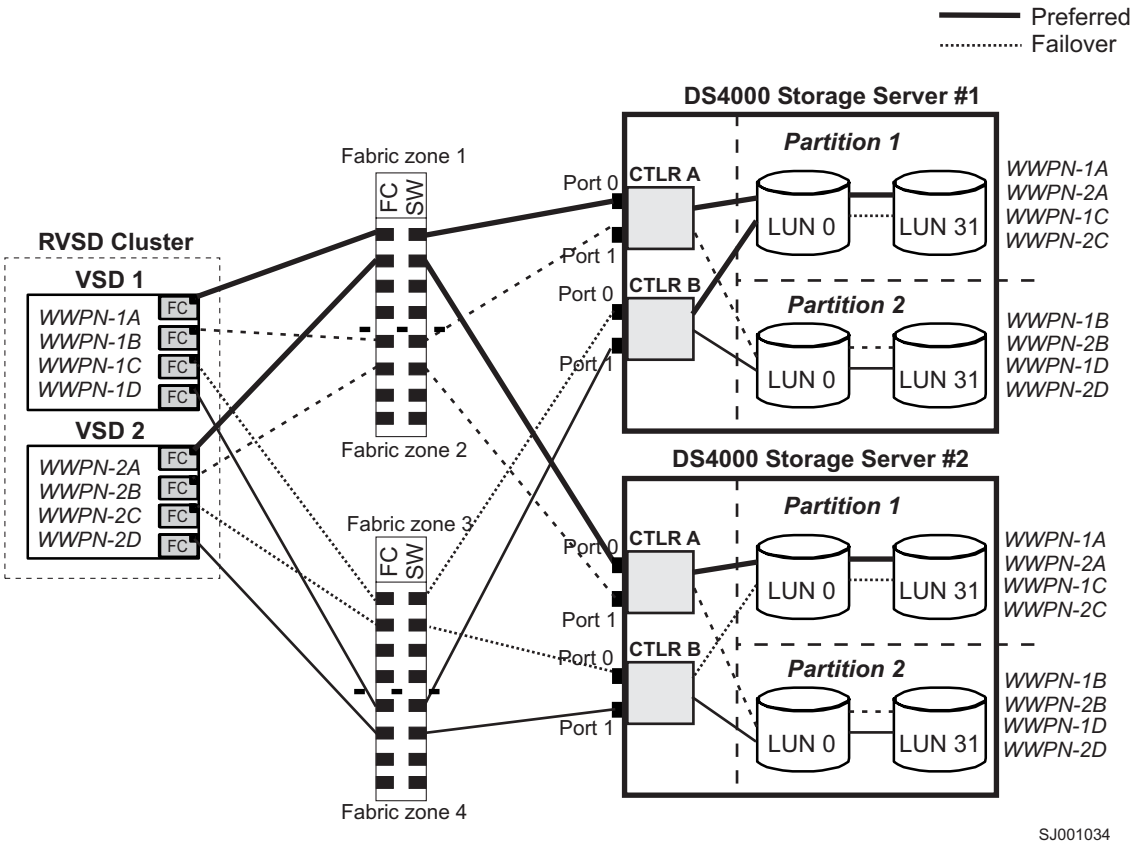


Figure 18. RVSD cluster configuration with two DS4000 storage servers — two partitions per DS4000

Figure 19 on page 188 shows an HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration that contains a single DS4000 storage server, with one partition.

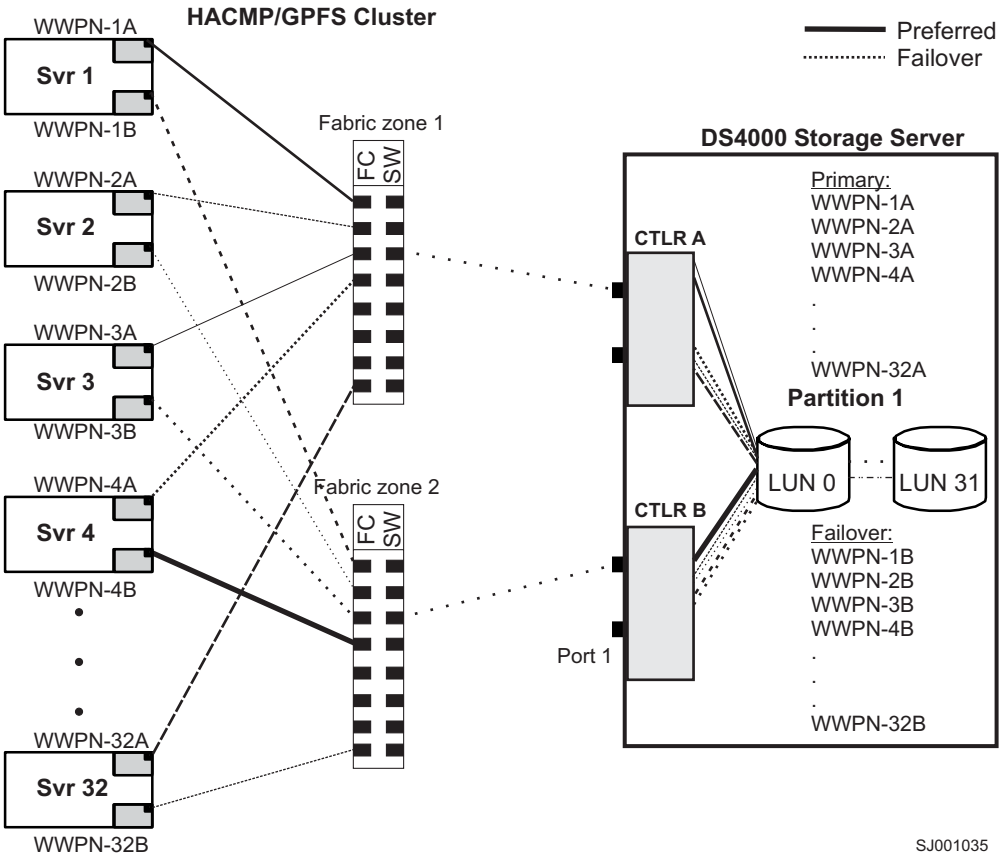


Figure 19. HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration with one DS4000 storage server — one partition

Figure 20 on page 189 shows an HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration that contains two DS4000 storage servers, with two partitions on each storage server.

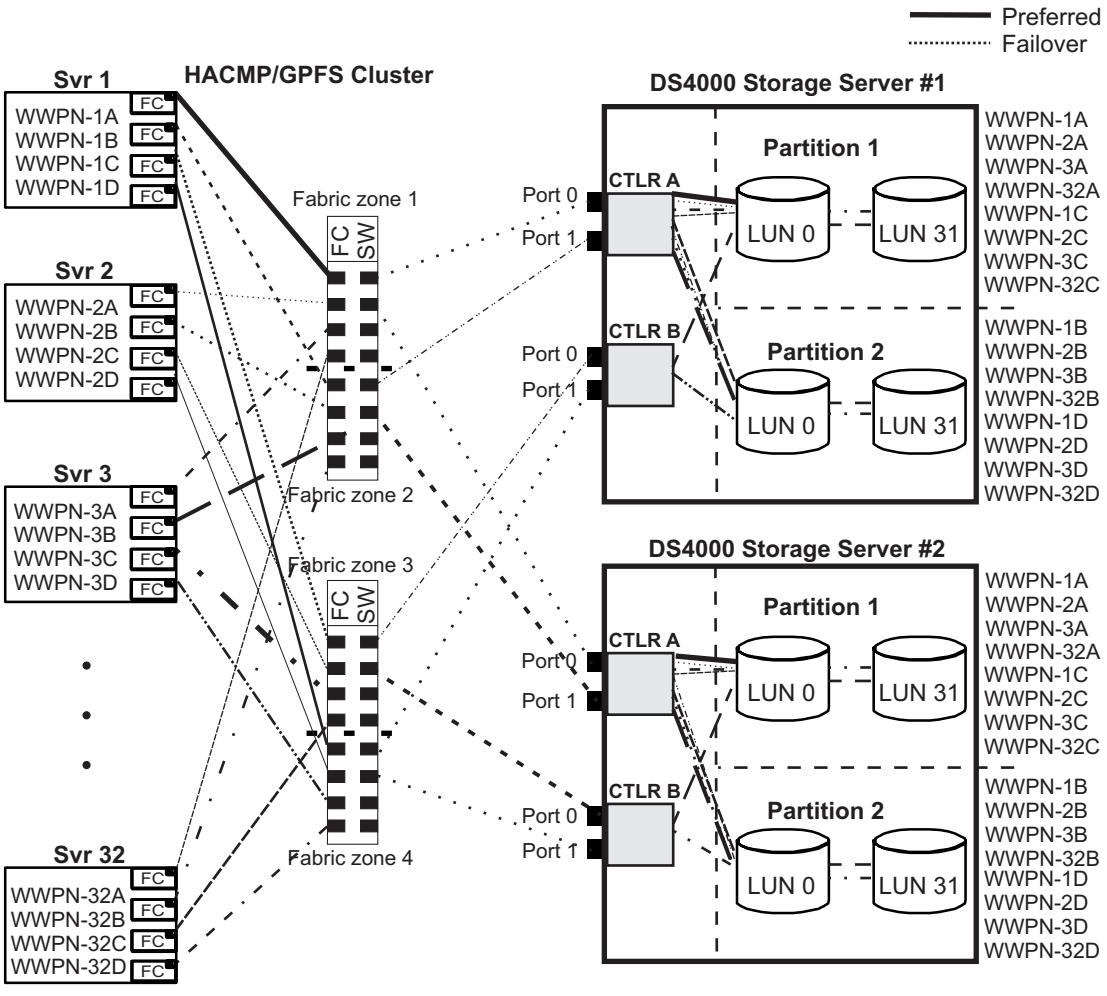


Figure 20. HACMP/GPFS cluster configuration with two DS4000 storage servers — two partitions per DS4000

Appendix A. MC/Service Guard configuration details

Note: The Hewlett Packard publication *Managing MC/ServiceGuard* suggests using **vgimport -m -s** with LVM commands during the configuration distribution process. It is important to consider, however, that the **vgimport** command does not preserve the primary and alternate paths of the imported volume groups.

When **vgimport** reconstructs the newly imported volume groups, entries are made in the /etc/lvmtab file. In this process of reconstruction, the system reorders disks in the file. The revised order of LUNs on the list causes LUNs to remain on non-preferred paths after failover. You might expect this condition to occur during distribution of the volume groups using the following LVM command:

```
vgimport -s -m /tmp/vg_group_name.map /dev/vg_group_name
```

where *vg_group_name* is the name of the volume group that is being distributed.

This precaution applies only when you use the -s option to import devices or disks with redundant paths. The condition occurs because the -s option causes a search on the system for each disk when used with **vgimport**.

When the new list is prepared, the links that were previously designated as primary and alternate might not remain as they had been configured on node *A*.

Complete the following steps to correct the paths that were changed in this way when using **vgimport -m -s** with LVM commands.

Note: The following instructions are for a two-node cluster. You can easily expand or adapt these instructions to accommodate a cluster which has more than two nodes.

1. Identify and note the primary and alternate paths for each device by typing the following command:

```
# SMdevices
```

2. Compare the primary and alternate paths for each device on node *A* to Node *B* by using the **vgdisplay -v** command. As previously noted, an expected behavior of the **vgimport -m -s** command is that the primary and alternate paths change during export.

   On node *A*:

```
#vgdisplay -v volume_group_name
```

   where *vg_group_name* is the name of the volume group whose paths you want to display.

   On node *B*:

```
#vgdisplay -v volume_group_name
```

   where *vg_group_name* is the name of the volume group whose paths you want to display.

3. If the original primary path of a disk becomes an alternate path after the newly imported volume group entry is created in /etc/lvmtab, the order can be easily reverted by using **vgreduce** to remove the wrong primary path and then using

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

vgextend to add the path back again:

```
#vgreduce
vg1 /dev/dsk/device_name#vgextend
vg1 /dev/dsk/device_name
```

Appendix B. JNI and QLogic host bus adapter settings

The following tables detail settings for the various host bus adapter (HBA) cards for Sun Solaris.

JNI HBA card settings

The JNI cards are not plug-and-play with auto-configuration. Instead, you might need to change the settings or bindings.

Table 31. Configuration settings for FCI-1063

Original value	New value	Comments
fca_nport = 0;	fca_nport = 1;	
ip_disable = 0;	ip_disable =1;	
failover = 30;	failover = 60;	
busy_retry_delay= 5000;	busy_retry_delay = 5000;	
link_recovery_delay = 1000;	link_recovery_delay = 1000;	
scsi_probe_delay = 5000;	scsi_probe_delay = 5000;	
def_hba_binding = “fca-pci*”;	def_hba_binding = “nonjni”;	
def_wwnn_binding = “$xxxxxx”	def_wwnn_binding = “xxxxxx”	Uncomment the line. Remove the $.
def_wwpn_binding = “$xxxxxx”	Same as the original entry.	Uncomment the line.
Will be added by reconfigure script	name=“fca-pci” parent=“*physical path*” unit-address=“*#*”	Uncomment the line.
Will be added by reconfigure script	target0_hba=“fca-pci0” target0_wwpn=“*controller wwpn*”;	
Will be added by reconfigure script	name=“fca-pci” parent=“*physical path*”unit-address=“***#***”	
Will be added by reconfigure script	target0_hba=“fca-pci1” target0_wwpn= “*controller wwpn*”;	

Note: You might need to run the */etc/raid/bin/genjniconf* reconfigure script from the Solaris shell.

```
# /etc/raid/bin/genjniconf
```

Table 32. Configuration settings for FCE-1473/FCE-6460/FCX2-6562/FCC2-6562

Original value	New value	Comments
FcLoopEnabled = 1	FcLoopEnabled = 0	Uncomment the line.
FcFabricEnabled = 0	FcFabricEnabled = 1	Uncomment the line.
FailoverDelay = 30;	FailoverDelay = 60;	Uncomment the line.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Table 32. Configuration settings for FCE-1473/FCE-6460/FCX2-6562/FCC2-6562 (continued)

Original value	New value	Comments
def_hba_binding = JNIC146x	Direct-attached configurations: def_hba_binding = JNIC146x SAN-attached configurations: def_hba_binding = null	Setting depends on whether you have a direct-attached or SAN-attached configuration.
JniCreationDelay = 5;	JniCreationDelay = 10;	Uncomment the line.
def_wwnn_binding = “$xxxxxxxxxxx”	def_wwnn_binding = “xxxxxxxxxxx”	Uncomment the line.
def_wwpn_binding = “$xxxxxxxxxxx”	Same as the original entry.	Uncomment the line.
Add	target0_hba = “jnic146x0”;	
Add	target0_wwpn = “<controller wwpn>”	
Add	target1_hba = “jnic146x1”;	
Add	target1_wwpn = “<controller wwpn>”	

Note: You might need to run the */etc/raid/bin/genjniconf* reconfigure script from the Solaris shell.

```
# /etc/raid/bin/genjniconf
```

Table 33. Configuration settings for FCE-1063/FCE2-1063/FCE-6410/FCE2-6410

Original value	New value	Comment
FcLoopEnabled = 1	FcLoopEnabled = 0	Uncomment the line.
FcFabricEnabled = 0	FcFabricEnabled = 1	Uncomment the line.
FailoverDelay = 30;	FailoverDelay = 60;	Uncomment the line.
JniCreationDelay = 5;	JniCreationDelay = 10;	Uncomment the line.
def_wwnn_binding = “$xxxxxxxxxxx”	def_wwnn_binding = “xxxxxxxxxxx”	Uncomment the line.
def_wwpn_binding = “$xxxxxxxxxxx”	Same as the original entry.	Uncomment the line.
Add	target0_hba = “jnic146x0”;	
Add	target0_wwpn = “*controller wwpn*”	
Add	target1_hba = “jnic146x1”;	
Add	target1_wwpn = “*controller wwpn*”	

Note:

- You might need to run the */etc/raid/bin/genjniconf* reconfigure script from the Solaris shell.

```
# /etc/raid/bin/genjniconf
```

- Set *portEnabled = 1;* only when you see JNI cards entering non-participating mode in the */var/adm/messages* file. Under that condition:
  1. Set *FcPortCfgEnabled = 1;*

2. Restart the host.
3. Set *FcPortCfgEnabled = 0;*
4. Restart the host again.

   When you have done so, check */var/adm/messages* to be sure that it sets the JNI cards to Fabric or Loop mode.

Table 34. Configuration settings for FC64-1063

Original value	New value	Comments
fca_nport = 0;	fca_nport =1;	
ip_disable = 0;	ip_disable=1;	
failover = 0;	failover =30;	
busy_retry_delay = 5000;	busy_retry_delay = 5000;	
link_recovery_delay = 1000;	link_recovery_delay = 1000;	
scsi_probe_delay = 5000;	scsi_probe_delay = 5000;	
def_hba_binding = “fcaw*”;	Direct attached configurations: def_hba_binding = “fcaw*”; SAN-attached configurations: def_hba_binding = “nonJNI”;	Setting depends on whether you have a direct-attached or SAN-attached configuration.
def_wwnn_binding = “$xxxxxx”	def_wwnn_bindindef_hba_ binding = “nonjni”; g = “xxxxxx”	Uncomment the line.
def_wwnn_binding = “$xxxxxx”	Same as the original entry.	Uncomment the line.
Will be added by reconfigure script	name=“fcaw” parent=“<physical path>”unit-address=“<#>”	
Will be added by reconfigure script	target0_hba=“fcaw0” target0_wwpn=“<controller wwpn>”;	
Will be added by reconfigure script	name=“fcaw” parent=“<physical path>”unit-address=“<#>”	
Will be added by reconfigure script	target0_hba=“fcaw0” target0_wwpn= “<controller wwpn>”;	

Note: You might need to run the */etc/raid/bin/genscsiconf* reconfigure script from the shell prompt.

```
# /etc/raid/bin/genscsiconf
```

QLogic HBA card settings

The QLogic cards are not plug-and-play with auto-configuration. Instead, you need to change the settings or bindings, as described in Table 35.

Note: In Table 35, the HBA is identified as **hba0**. However, you need to modify the settings on both QLogic HBA cards: **hba0** and **hba1**.

When you modify the settings on **hba1** use the same values that are listed in the table, but change all instances of **hba0** to **hba1**, as shown in the following example:

	Original value	**New value**
hba0	hba0-execution-throttle=16;	hba0-execution-throttle=255;
hba1	hba1-execution-throttle=16;	hba1-execution-throttle=255;

In the Vi Editor, uncomment and modify the loop attributes of each QLogic HBA card, using the values described in Table 35.

Table 35. Configuration settings for QL2342

Original value	**New value**	**Comments**
hba0-max-frame-length=2048;	hba0-max-frame-length=2048	Use the default.
hba0-execution-throttle=16;	hba0-execution-throttle=255;	Change.
hba0-login-retry-count=8;	hba0-login-retry-count=30;	Change.
hba0-enable-adapter-hard-loop-ID=0;	hba0-enable-adapter-hard-loop-ID=1;	Change.
hba0-adapter-hard-loop-ID=0;	hba0-adapter-hard-loop-ID=0;	Needs to be a unique number.
hba0-enable-LIP-reset=0;	hba0-enable-LIP-reset=0;	Use the default.
hba0-enable-LIP-full-login=1;	hba0-enable-LIP-full-login=1;	Use the default.
hba0-enable-target-reset=0;	hba0-enable-target-reset=0;	Use the default.
hba0-reset-delay=5	hba0-reset-delay=8	Change.
hba0-port-down-retry-count=8;	hba0-port-down-retry-count=70;	Change.
hba0-maximum-luns-per-target=8;	hba0-maximum-luns-per-target=0;	Change.
hba0-connection-options=2;	hba0-connection-options=2;	Use the default.
hba0-fc-tape=1;	hba0-fc-tape=0;	Change.

Appendix C. Downloading ESM firmware and drive firmware

The information in this appendix describes how to download current ESM firmware to an DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosure and current drive firmware to a DS4000 storage server, using the following procedures:

- "Verifying and downloading ESM firmware"
- "Downloading drive firmware" on page 200

Verifying and downloading ESM firmware

This section describes how to verify current ESM firmware levels and how to download ESM firmware to an DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosure, using the following procedures:

- "Verifying current ESM firmware version"
- "Downloading ESM firmware" on page 198

Important: If you are using Storage Manager controller firmware version 5.41.xx.xx or 5.42.xx.xx with the EXP100, the EXP100 ESM firmware must be at version 955x or higher. However, you cannot upgrade the EXP100 firmware from 953x to 955x.

Before proceeding, see the *IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP100 Storage Expansion Enclosure Installation and User's Guide* or see the readme for controller firmware version 5.42.xx.xx at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for **DS4100 (FAStT100)**. When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for **Current recommended Firmware (v5.42) and Storage Manager (v8.42)**.

Verifying current ESM firmware version

Choose one of the following methods to determine the storage expansion enclosure's ESM firmware version, using DS4000 Storage Manager.

- **Method One:**
  1. In the Subsystem Management window, click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window opens.
  2. Select the **Enclosures** tab and scroll through the Profile For Storage Subsystem panel to locate the ESM card firmware version information.

  Tip: The Profile for Storage Subsystem panel contains all the profile information for the entire subsystem. Therefore, it might be necessary to scroll through a large amount of information to locate the ESM firmware version information.
- **Method Two:**
  1. In the Physical View panel of the Subsystem Management window, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> ESM firmware**. The Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window opens.
  2. In the Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window, locate the firmware version of each ESM in the drive enclosure.

     Tip: Each enclosure has two ESM cards: A and B.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Downloading ESM firmware

To find the latest versions of ESM firmware files that you need to download, see the most recent readme file, which is located at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables, find the Storage Manager listing for your operating system and click the link in the Current Version column.

Complete the following procedures to download ESM firmware:

- "Preparing for the download"
- "Downloading the ESM firmware" on page 199

Preparing for the download

To prepare for the download, review and complete all of the steps in this section before you start the download procedures that are listed in "Downloading the ESM firmware" on page 199.

Before you begin: Ensure that you have the latest version of the DS4000 Storage Manager installed on your DS4000 management station. You can download the latest version from the following IBM DS4000 support Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Complete the following steps to prepare your system for the firmware download:

1. Backup your logical drives

Complete a full backup of all logical drives that are defined in the DS4000 storage server.

4. Save the storage subsystem profile

Saving a profile is necessary in order to restore a storage subsystem configuration in the event of a catastrophic failure. Save your storage subsystem profile by completing the following steps:

1. In the Subsystem Management Menu, select **View –> Storage Subsystem Profile**. The Storage Subsystem Profile window opens.
2. In the Storage Subsystem Profile window, click **Save As**. The Save Profile window opens.
3. In the Save Profile window, select or enter the file directory and file name. Click **Save** to save the profile. The Save Profile window closes.

   Attention: Do *not* store DS4000 Storage Server profiles in the same location as the logical drives that are defined on your DS4000 Storage Server. If you do, and the logical drives fail during the subsequent migration, you will lose data.
4. Click **Close** to close the Storage Subsystem Profile window.

5. Verify current EXP ESM status

In the DS4000 Storage Manager Subsystem Management window, verify that all ESMs in the configuration that you are upgrading are in the Optimal state, and there are not any lost drive-path redundancy errors. Correct any problems using the suggested instructions in the DS4000 Storage Manager Recovery Guru window.

To verify, either click the **Recovery Guru** icon in the Subsystem Management window, or click the **Enclosure Status** icon in each enclosure with the red X mark overlay, as displayed in the Physical View.

6. **Stop all subsystem monitoring operations**
   Subsystem monitoring operations such as temperature monitoring, fan and power supply status checking, and drive insertion or removal, must be stopped during the ESM firmware download.

   Note: Error reporting for failed components is deferred until after the download is complete.

7. **Determine whether you need to stop I/O**

   Downloading firmware without stopping I/O is referred to as *concurrent download*. Concurrent ESM firmware download is supported with the following conditions:

   - You can only use concurrent ESM firmware download with Fibre Channel storage expansion enclosures. With SATA storage expansion enclosures, you must stop I/O before downloading ESM firmware.
   - You must download the ESM firmware to one storage expansion enclosure at a time. If you want to download ESM firmware to multiple storage expansion enclosures at the same time, you must stop I/O before downloading.
   - Ensure that concurrent ESM download is supported with the new ESM firmware package by checking its readme file before you download the package. If concurrent download is not supported with the new firmware, you must stop I/O before downloading the firmware.

When you are done, continue to "Downloading the ESM firmware."

Downloading the ESM firmware

Before you begin: To find the latest versions of ESM firmware files that you need to download, see the most recent readme file, which is located at the following Web site:

www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

Click the link for your storage server.

When the page opens, click the Download tab, then click the link for your Storage Manager firmware level. In the tables, find the Storage Manager listing for your operating system and click the link in the Current Version column.

Complete the following steps to download the ESM firmware to the DS4000 EXP storage expansion enclosure:

1. In the Subsystem Management window, select **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> ESM firmware**. The Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window opens.
2. In the Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window, select the storage expansion enclosure to be updated with new firmware, and then click **Browse** to open the Select Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware File window.

   Attention: You can download the ESM firmware to several storage expansion enclosures at the same time by selecting more than one storage expansion enclosure – however, you must stop all I/O before

performing the download. If you do not want to stop I/O, then download the ESM firmware to each storage expansion enclosure, one at a time.

3. In the Select Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware File window, select the directory that contains the ESM firmware file, then select the name of the ESM firmware file. Click **OK** to close the window and continue.

   Note: You might need to select All Files (*.*) in the "Files of type" pull-down menu to display the correct file name for selection. If you do, then a warning window opens. Click **OK** when the warning window opens.

4. In the Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window, click **Start**. When the Confirm Download window opens, type `yes` and click **OK**. The ESM firmware download begins. During the download, the status field of the Download Environmental (ESM) Card Firmware window displays the progress of each enclosure.

When the status field of each enclosure displays a status of `Complete`, the ESM firmware download is complete.

Downloading drive firmware

This section provides instructions for downloading DS4000 drive firmware. See the online help for additional information.

Important:

1. IBM supports firmware download with I/O, sometimes referred to as ″concurrent firmware download.″ This feature is not supported for drive firmware.
2. Before starting the drive firmware download process:
   - Stop all I/O activity before downloading drive firmware to a DS4000 Storage Server.
   - Unmount the file systems on all logical drives accessing the drives that you select for firmware upgrade.
   - Complete a full backup of all data residing on the drives that you select for firmware upgrade.

Downloading Storage Manager version 9.10 drive firmware

To download drive firmware for DS4000 Storage Manager version 9.10, perform the following steps:

1. From the Enterprise Management window, select a storage subsystem.
2. On the Enterprise Management window's menu bar, click **Tools —> Manage Device**. The Subsystem Management window opens.
3. On the Subsystem Management window's menu bar, click **Advanced —> Maintenance —> Download —> Drive Firmware/Mode pages ...**. The Download Drive Firmware wizard window opens to the Introduction page. Read the instructions displayed and click **Next**.

   Note: Storage Manager version 9.10 offers you the option to download and update up to four different firmware file types simultaneously. Previous Storage Manager versions did not offer this capability.

4. Click **Browse** to locate the server directory that contains the firmware that you plan to download.

5. Select the firmware file that you plan to download and click **OK**. The file appears listed in the ″Selected Packages″ window pane.
6. Select the firmware file for any additional drive types that you intend to download and click **OK**. Additional files appear listed in the ″Selected Packages″ window pane. A maximum total of four drive types is possible.
7. Click **Browse** to repeat step 6 until you have selected each firmware file that you plan to download.
8. When you have finished specifying the firmware packages for download, select **Next**.
9. The Select Drive window opens, containing two tabs, a **Compatible Drives** tab and an **Incompatible Drives** tab. The **Compatible Drives** tab contains a list of the drives compatible to the firmware package types that you selected. From that list, select the drives to which you plan to download the drive firmware that you selected in steps 6 and 7.

   Note: The firmware that you propose to download should be listed on the **Compatible Drives** tab. If your particular drives' product ID matches the firmware type, however, and it is not listed as compatible on the tab, contact your IBM technical support representative for additional instructions.
10. Select the **Compatible Drives** tab.

    Press and hold the **Ctrl** key while using your mouse to select multiple drives individually, or press and hold the **Shift** key while using your mouse to select multiple drives listed in series. The compatible firmware that you selected in steps 5 and 6 will download to the drives that you select.
11. Click **Finish** to initiate download of the drive firmware to each compatible drive that you selected in step 9.
12. The Download Drive Firmware warning opens and prompts: ″Do you want to continue?″ Type **yes** and click **OK** to start the drive firmware download.
13. The Download Progress window opens. Do not intervene until the download process completes.
14. Every drive scheduled for firmware download will be designated as `in progress` until `successful` or `failed`.

    Note: Complete the following two steps if you receive a failure.
    a. Click the **Save as** button to save the error log.
    b. On the Subsystem Management window menu bar, click **Advanced —> Trouble Shooting —> Open Event Log** and complete the following tasks necessary to save the storage subsystem event log before contacting your IBM Service Representative and proceeding to step 15.
       1) Click the **Select all** button.
       2) Click **Save the Storage Subsystem Event Log**.

    When the **Close** button appears active, the drive firmware download process is complete.
15. Click **Close** to exit the Download Progress window.
16. Use either of the following procedures to determine or verify what level of drive firmware resides on a particular drive:
    - Right-click that drive in the Logical/Physical View in the Subsystem Management window and click **Properties**. The associated drive firmware version will be listed in the drive properties table.

- Right-click **Storage Subsystem —> View Profile** in the Logical/Physical View of the Subsystem Management window.

Downloading Storage Manager version 8.x drive firmware

To download drive firmware for DS4000 Storage Manager version 8.x, perform the following steps:

1. From the Enterprise Management window, select a storage subsystem.
2. Click **Tools —> Manage Device**. The Subsystem Management window opens.
3. Click **Advanced —> Download —> Drive Firmware**. The Download Drive Firmware window opens. It presents a list of all installed drives.
4. From the list of all installed drives, select the drive to which you plan to download drive firmware.

   Press and hold the **Ctrl** key while using your mouse to select multiple drives singly, or press and hold the **Shift** key while selecting multiple drives in series by using your mouse pointer.
5. Click **Browse** to identify the directory that contains the drive firmware that you intend to download.
6. Select the file containing the drive firmware that you intend to download.
7. Select **Start**. The Confirm Download window appears.
8. Type **yes** when the Confirm Download window prompts: `Are you sure you want to continue?`
9. The download begins and the Status window indicates progress. Do not intervene until the download process completes.
10. When the **Cancel** button appears active, the download process is complete. Press **Cancel** to close the Status window.
11. To determine or verify the level of drive firmware residing on a particular drive, click **View —> Subsystem Profile** in the Logical/Physical View of the Subsystem Management window.

Appendix D. Additional DS4000 documentation

The following tables present an overview of the DS4500, DS4400, DS4300 Fibre Channel, and DS4100 SATA Storage Server product libraries, as well as other related documents. Each table lists documents that are included in the libraries and what common tasks they address.

You can access the documents listed in these tables at one of the following Web sites:

www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/disk/

www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/

DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server library

Table 36 associates each document in the DS4500 (previously FAStT900) Fibre Channel Storage Server library with its related common user tasks.

Table 36. TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Installation and Support Guide, GC26-7727	✓	✓		✓		
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Fibre Channel Cabling Instructions, GC26-7729	✓	✓				
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Storage Server User's Guide, GC26-7726				✓	✓	✓
IBM TotalStorage DS4500 Rack Mounting Instructions, GC26-7728	✓	✓				

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server library

Table 37 associates each document in the DS4400 (previously FAStT700) Fibre Channel Storage Server library with its related common user tasks.

Table 37. TotalStorage DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server User's Guide, GC26-7730	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
IBM DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server Installation and Support Guide, GC26-7731	✓	✓		✓	✓	
IBM DS4400 Fibre Channel Cabling Instructions, GC26-7732	✓	✓				

DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server library

Table 38 associates each document in the DS4300 (previously FAStT600) Fibre Channel Storage Server library with its related common user tasks.

Table 38. TotalStorage DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server document titles by user tasks

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server Installation and User's Guide, GC26-7722	✓	✓		✓		
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Rack Mounting Instructions, GC26-7724	✓	✓				
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Fibre Channel Cabling Instructions, GC26-7725	✓	✓				
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 SCU Base Upgrade Kit, GC26-7740		✓	✓			
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 SCU Turbo Upgrade Kit, GC26-7741		✓	✓			
IBM TotalStorage DS4300 Turbo Models 6LU/6LX Upgrade Kit, GC26-7723		✓	✓			

DS4100 SATA Storage Server library

Table 39 associates each document in the DS4100 (previously FAStT100) SATA Storage Server library with its related common user tasks.

Table 39. TotalStorage DS4100 SATA Storage Server document titles by user tasks

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 Installation, User's and Maintenance Guide, GC26-7733	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
IBM TotalStorage DS4100 Cabling Guide, 24P8973		✓				

Other DS4000 and DS4000-related documents

Table 40 associates each of the following documents with its related common user tasks.

Table 40. TotalStorage DS4000 and DS4000–related document titles by user tasks

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM Safety Information, P48P9741					✓	
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Quick Start Guide, GC26-7738	✓	✓				
*IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Hardware Maintenance Manual,*GC26-7702						✓
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Problem Determination Guide, GC26-7703						✓
IBM Fibre Channel Planning and Integration: User's Guide and Service Information, SC23-4329	✓	✓			✓	✓
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 FC2-133 Host Bus Adapter Installation and User's Guide, GC26-7736		✓			✓	
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 FC2-133 Dual Port Host Bus Adapter Installation and User's Guide, GC26-7737		✓			✓	
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Fibre Channel and Serial ATA Intermix Premium Feature Installation Overview GC26-7713	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Fibre Channel Solutions - IBM DS4000 EXP500 Installation and User's Guide, 59p5637	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓

Table 40. TotalStorage DS4000 and DS4000–related document titles by user tasks (continued)

Title	User Tasks					
	Planning	**Hardware Installation**	**Software Installation**	**Configuration**	**Operation and Administration**	**Diagnosis and Maintenance**
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 and EXP710 Storage Expansion Enclosures Installation, User's, and Maintenance Guide, GC26-7735	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Hard Drive and Storage Expansion Enclosures Installation and Migration Guide, GC26-7704	✓	✓				
IBM DS4000 Management Suite Java User's Guide, 32P0081					✓	✓
IBM Netfinity® Fibre Channel Cabling Instructions, 19K0906		✓				
IBM Fibre Channel SAN Configuration Setup Guide, 25P2509	✓		✓	✓	✓	

Appendix E. Connecting HBAs in a FC switch environment

When connecting fibre channel host bus adapters in host servers to DS4000 Storage Server host ports in a fibre channel switch environment, IBM recommends that you establish one-to-one zones between the HBA and DS4000 host ports.

For instructions on how to set up a zone inside a fibre channel switch, see the installation and user's guide for your fibre channel switch.

Note: You can find links to switch documentation at the following Web site:

www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/san/index.html

Figure 21 illustrates a sample configuration consisting of two host servers, each with two fibre channel host bus adapters, each of which are connected to a DS4000 Storage Server host port through a fibre channel switch.

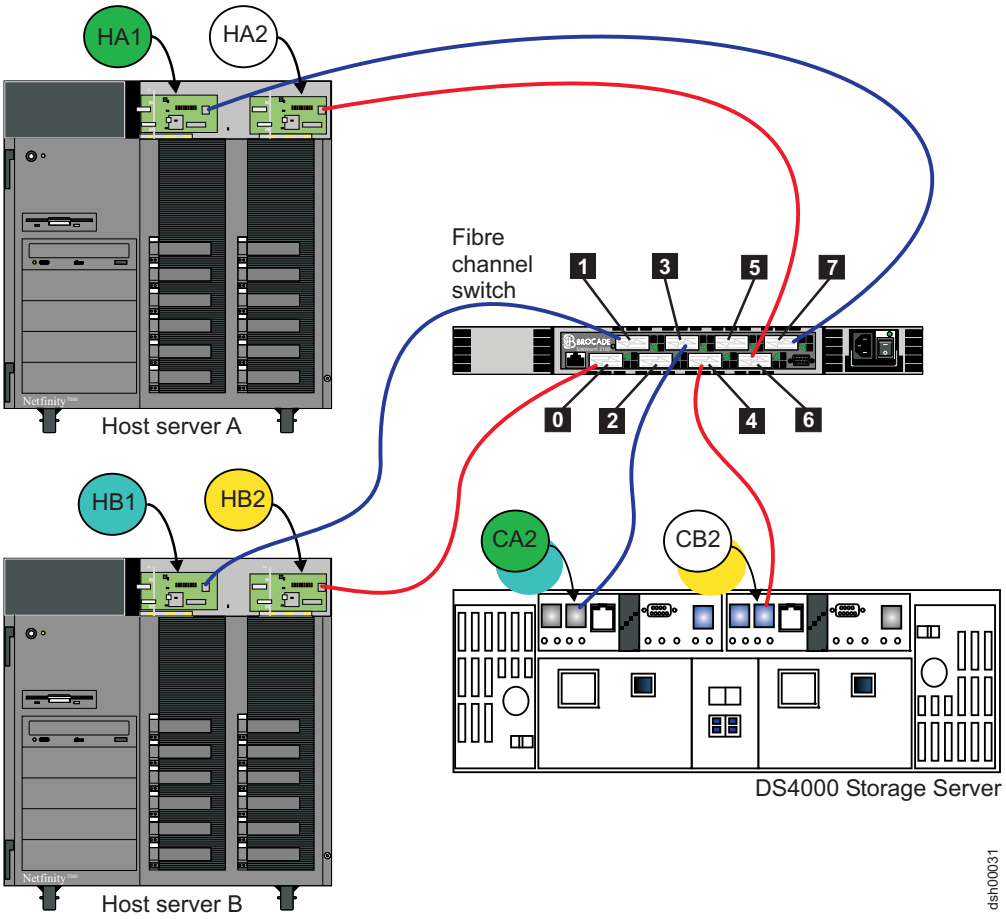


Figure 21. Fibre channel fabric switch environment connecting host servers to a DS4000 Storage Server

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

Legend:

Controller	Zone	Port	Connection to and from	Description
A	1	7 3	HA1 CA2	This will zone the fibre channel HBA port HA1 in host server A to port 2 of the DS4300 Storage Server controller A.
	2	1 3	HB1 CA2	This will zone the fibre channel HBA port HB1 in host server B to port 2 of the DS4300 Storage Server controller A.
B	3	6 4	HA2 CB2	This will zone the fibre channel HBA port HA2 in host server A to port 2 of the DS4300 Storage Server controller B.
	4	0 4	HB2 CB2	This will zone the fibre channel HBA port HB2 in host server B to port 2 of the DS4300 Storage Server controller B.

Appendix F. Limitations

This sections in this appendix contain descriptions of potential problems and ways to work around them.

AIX

The following information might apply to your storage subsystem.

1. Storage Manager prompts you for a password if all hard disk drives are removed from the storage subsystem. After removing all drives from a storage subsystem (or not powering on drives and only the controller), the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager software will prompt you for a password when trying to start the software or trying to perform protected operations. Any password entered will fail.

   Password information is stored on a reserved area of each hard disk drive on the storage subsystem. Each drive stores a mirrored copy of the password data. When there are no drives in the storage subsystem, the storage management software does not find the password data when you attempt password protected operations. Add one drive to the storage subsystem and retry the operation.
2. Auto LUN/Array Transfer is not supported. If a controller fails over arrays to the alternate controller and the failed controller is replaced and brought back online, the arrays do not automatically transfer to the preferred controller. This must be done manually by redistributing arrays.
3. If the controller in the IBM DS4000 Storage Server with firmware 05.4x.xx.xx is connected to a SAN with more than 256 host connections per controller port, that can log into the controllers, one must either use the switch zoning function or rearrange the SAN connections so that only the maximum number of host connections can be seen and log into the controller.
4. Dynamically changing the cache read ahead multiplier setting via the storage manager client may result in an error message indicating the operation has failed. Despite the error message, the request to change the cache read ahead multiplier will remain queued to the controllers and will eventually complete when I/O activity to the storage subsystem has subsided. In order to avoid the error message and any delays in the cache read ahead multiplier value changing, it is recommended to change the cache read ahead multiplier when the subsystem is in a quiesced state.

HP-UX

The following information might apply to your storage subsystem.

1. If you are upgrading controller firmware in IBM FAStT500 storage controller with 512MB Cache, you will have to stop I/O and reboot both controllers before upgrading firmware followed by NVSRAM. You can reboot the controllers either by power cycling the storage subsystem or by pressing the Reset button on both controllers. The Reset button is located on the right of the indicator lights in the opening on the front of each controller unit.

   To determine Storage Controller cache level, perform the following:

   a. On a storage management station start the client software and select a storage subsystem.
   b. Select Tools -> Manage Device to open the Subsystem Management Window

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

c. Highlight the Storage Subsystem that you are upgrading and then select Storage Subsystem -> Profile. It may take a little time for it to create the Storage Subsystem profile.

d. Under the Controllers heading is an entry that displays information similar to the following example:

```
Cache/processor size (MB):  256/32
```

If this setting is listed as 512/32 you will need to arrange to perform this upgrade procedure at a time that you can stop I/O to the Storage Subsystem in order to ensure a successful firmware download and installation.

2. Storage Manager prompts you for a password if all hard disk drives are removed from the storage subsystem. After removing all drives from a storage subsystem (or not powering on drives and only the controller), the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager software will prompt you for a password when trying to start the software or trying to perform protected operations. Any password entered will fail.

   Password information is stored on a reserved area of each hard disk drive on the storage subsystem. Each drive stores a mirrored copy of the password data. When there are no drives in the storage subsystem, the storage management software does not find the password data when you attempt password protected operations. Add one drive to the storage subsystem and retry the operation.

   Since the RAID controller unit should not be powered on until the expansion units are attached and powered on, this should be done by powering off the RAID controller unit, properly attaching all expansion units (with drives installed), to the RAID controller unit and powering them on, and then powering the RAID controller unit back on. At this point the storage subsystems can be rediscovered and managed using the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 8.3x software.

3. Display issues when using 256 color settings. A brownish hash pattern is displayed on the windows and in online help when running in 256 color mode. Run the Storage Manager 8 application in a higher display mode.

4. If you get Error 21 - The Operation cannot complete because a ... is in progress error when you issue a Subsystem Management command from the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Client, the command may be cached. If the command is cached, the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Client will run the command as soon as the controller resources are available. Wait for at least ten minutes and check to see whether the command has been run. If not, re-attempt the command.

5. The IBM FAStT500, DS4400 or DS4500 Storage Server hardware and software is designed to have redundant paths from the host system to ensure the availability of storage. However, it is possible to connect a single host adapter from the host system to one of the controller minihubs and then connect this minihub to the minihub of the other controller.

   This configuration will create a FC-AL loop between the host adapter and the two IBM FAStT500, DS4400 or DS4500 Storage Server controllers and no redundant path to the host system. When you connect the two minihubs together, always connect the IN port of one minihub to the OUT port of the other minihub or vice versa. Do not connect the IN port of one to the IN port of the other minihub or the OUT port of one minihub to the OUT port of the other minihub.

6. DS4000 now supports 127 LUNs on HP-UX. However, the number of actual LUNs might vary from HP-UX host to host. The number of LUNs supported varies depending on the number of processors and memory.
7. Dynamically changing the cache read ahead multiplier setting via the storage manager client may result in an error message indicating the operation has failed. Despite the error message, the request to change the cache read ahead multiplier will remain queued to the controllers and will eventually complete when I/O activity to the storage subsystem has subsided. In order to avoid the error message and any delays in the cache read ahead multiplier value changing, it is recommended to change the cache read ahead multiplier when the subsystem is in a quiesced state.

Solaris

1. Upgrading FAStT500 with 512MB Cache. If you are upgrading controller firmware in IBM FAStT500 storage controller (MT 3552), you will have to stop I/O and reboot both controllers before upgrading NVSRAM followed by Firmware. You can reboot the controller by either power cycle the storage subsystem or by pressing the Reset button on both controllers. The Reset button is located on the right of the indicator lights in the opening on the front of each controller unit.

   To determine Storage Controller cache level, perform the following:

   a. On a storage management station start the client software and select a storage subsystem.
   b. Select Tools -> Manage Device to open the Subsystem Management Window
   c. Highlight the Storage Subsystem that you are upgrading and then select Storage Subsystem -> Profile. It may take a little time for it to create the Storage Subsystem profile.
   d. Under the Controllers heading is an entry that displays information similar to the following example:

      ```
      Cache/processor size (MB):  256/32
      ```

      If this setting is listed as 512/32 you will need to arrange to perform this upgrade procedure at a time that you can stop I/O to the Storage Subsystem in order to ensure a successful firmware download and installation.
2. Storage Manager prompts you for a password if all hard disk drives are removed from the storage subsystem. After removing all drives from a storage subsystem (or not powering on drives and only the controller), the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager software will prompt you for a password when trying to start the software or trying to perform protected operations. Any password entered will fail.

   Password information is stored on a reserved area of each hard disk drive on the storage subsystem. Each drive stores a mirrored copy of the password data. When there are no drives in the storage subsystem, the storage management software does not find the password data when you attempt password protected operations. Add one drive to the storage subsystem and retry the operation.

   Since the RAID controller unit should not be powered on until the expansion units are attached and powered on, this should be done by powering off the RAID controller unit, properly attaching all expansion units (with drives installed), to the RAID controller unit and powering them on, and then powering the RAID

controller unit back on. At this point the storage subsystems can be rediscovered and managed using the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager 8.3x software.

3. Auto LUN/Array Transfer is not supported. If a controller fails over arrays to the alternate controller and the failed controller is replaced and brought back online, the arrays do not automatically transfer to the preferred controller. This must be done manually by redistributing arrays.
4. Display issues when using 256 color settings. A brownish hash pattern is displayed on the windows and in online help when running in 256 color mode. Run the Storage Manager 8 application in a higher display mode.
5. If you get Error 21 - The Operation cannot complete because a ... is in progress error when you issue a Subsystem Management command from the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Client, the command may be cached. If the command is cached, the IBM DS4000 Storage Manager Client will run the command as soon as the controller resources are available. Wait for at least ten minutes and check to see whether the command has been run. If not, re-attempt the command.
6. The IBM FAStT500, DS4400 or DS4500 Storage Server hardware and software is designed to have redundant paths from the host system to ensure the availability of storage. However, it is possible to connect a single host adapter from the host system to one of the controller minihubs and then connect this minihub to the minihub of the other controller.

   This configuration will create a FC-AL loop between the host adapter and the two IBM FAStT500, DS4400 or DS4500 Storage Server controllers and no redundant path to the host system. When you connect the two minihubs together, always connect the IN port of one minihub to the OUT port of the other minihub or vice versa. Do not connect the IN port of one to the IN port of the other minihub or the OUT port of one minihub to the OUT port of the other minihub.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106-0032, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATIONS ″AS IS″ WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publications. IBM may make improvements or changes (or both) in the product(s) or program(s) (or both), described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance,

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Some software may differ from its retail version (if available), and may not include user manuals or all program functionality.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

IBM
AIX
@server
FlashCopy
Netfinity
POWER
pSeries
RS/6000
TotalStorage

Microsoft Windows and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Glossary

This glossary provides definitions for the terminology and abbreviations used in IBM TotalStorage DS4000 publications.

If you do not find the term you are looking for, see the *IBM Glossary of Computing Terms* located at the following Web site:

www.ibm.com/ibm/terminology

This glossary also includes terms and definitions from:

- *Information Technology Vocabulary* by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission (ISO/IEC JTC1/SC1). Definitions are identified by the symbol (I) after the definition; definitions taken from draft international standards, committee drafts, and working papers by ISO/IEC JTC1/SC1 are identified by the symbol (T) after the definition, indicating that final agreement has not yet been reached among the participating National Bodies of SC1.
- *IBM Glossary of Computing Terms*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.

The following cross-reference conventions are used in this glossary:

See Refers you to (a) a term that is the expanded form of an abbreviation or acronym, or (b) a synonym or more preferred term.

See also Refers you to a related term.

Abstract Windowing Toolkit (AWT). A Java graphical user interface (GUI).

accelerated graphics port (AGP). A bus specification that gives low-cost 3D graphics cards faster access to main memory on personal computers than the usual peripheral component interconnect (PCI) bus. AGP reduces the overall cost of creating high-end graphics subsystems by using existing system memory.

access volume. A special logical drive that allows the host-agent to communicate with the controllers in the storage subsystem.

adapter. A printed circuit assembly that transmits user data input/output (I/O) between the internal bus of the host system and the external fibre-channel (FC) link and vice versa. Also called an I/O adapter, host adapter, or FC adapter.

advanced technology (AT) bus architecture. A bus standard for IBM compatibles. It extends the XT bus architecture to 16 bits and also allows for bus mastering, although only the first 16 MB of main memory are available for direct access.

agent. A server program that receives virtual connections from the network manager (the client program) in a Simple Network Management Protocol-Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (SNMP-TCP/IP) network-managing environment.

AGP. See *accelerated graphics port*.

AL_PA. See *arbitrated loop physical address*.

arbitrated loop. One of three existing fibre-channel topologies, in which 2 - 126 ports are interconnected serially in a single loop circuit. Access to the Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL) is controlled by an arbitration scheme. The FC-AL topology supports all classes of service and guarantees in-order delivery of FC frames when the originator and responder are on the same FC-AL. The default topology for the disk array is arbitrated loop. An arbitrated loop is sometimes referred to as a Stealth Mode.

arbitrated loop physical address (AL_PA). An 8-bit value that is used to uniquely identify an individual port within a loop. A loop can have one or more AL_PAs.

array. A collection of fibre-channel or SATA hard drives that are logically grouped together. All the drives in the array are assigned the same RAID level. An array is sometimes referred to as a ″RAID set.″ See also *redundant array of independent disks (RAID)*, *RAID level*.

asynchronous write mode. In remote mirroring, an option that allows the primary controller to return a write I/O request completion to the host server before data has been successfully written by the secondary controller. See also *synchronous write mode*, *remote mirroring*, *Global Copy*,*Global Mirroring*.

AT. See *advanced technology (AT) bus architecture*.

ATA. See *AT-attached*.

AT-attached. Peripheral devices that are compatible with the original IBM AT computer standard in which signals on a 40-pin AT-attached (ATA) ribbon cable followed the timings and constraints of the Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) system bus on the IBM PC AT computer. Equivalent to integrated drive electronics (IDE).

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

auto-volume transfer/auto-disk transfer (AVT/ADT). A function that provides automatic failover in case of controller failure on a storage subsystem.

AVT/ADT. See *auto-volume transfer/auto-disk transfer*.

AWT. See *Abstract Windowing Toolkit*.

basic input/output system (BIOS). The personal computer code that controls basic hardware operations, such as interactions with diskette drives, hard disk drives, and the keyboard.

BIOS. See *basic input/output system*.

BOOTP. See *bootstrap protocol*.

bootstrap protocol (BOOTP). In Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) networking, an alternative protocol by which a diskless machine can obtain its Internet Protocol (IP) address and such configuration information as IP addresses of various servers from a BOOTP server.

bridge. A storage area network (SAN) device that provides physical and transport conversion, such as fibre channel to small computer system interface (SCSI) bridge.

bridge group. A bridge and the collection of devices connected to it.

broadcast. The simultaneous transmission of data to more than one destination.

cathode ray tube (CRT). A display device in which controlled electron beams are used to display alphanumeric or graphical data on an electroluminescent screen.

client. A computer system or process that requests a service of another computer system or process that is typically referred to as a server. Multiple clients can share access to a common server.

command. A statement used to initiate an action or start a service. A command consists of the command name abbreviation, and its parameters and flags if applicable. A command can be issued by typing it on a command line or selecting it from a menu.

community string. The name of a community contained in each Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) message.

concurrent download. A method of downloading and installing firmware that does not require the user to stop I/O to the controllers during the process.

CRC. See *cyclic redundancy check*.

CRT. See *cathode ray tube*.

CRU. See *customer replaceable unit*.

customer replaceable unit (CRU). An assembly or part that a customer can replace in its entirety when any of its components fail. Contrast with *field replaceable unit (FRU)*.

cyclic redundancy check (CRC). (1) A redundancy check in which the check key is generated by a cyclic algorithm. (2) An error detection technique performed at both the sending and receiving stations.

dac. See *disk array controller*.

dar. See *disk array router*.

DASD. See *direct access storage device*.

data striping. See *striping*.

default host group. A logical collection of discovered host ports, defined host computers, and defined host groups in the storage-partition topology that fulfill the following requirements:

- Are not involved in specific logical drive-to-LUN mappings
- Share access to logical drives with default logical drive-to-LUN mappings

device type. Identifier used to place devices in the physical map, such as the switch, hub, or storage.

DHCP. See *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*.

direct access storage device (DASD). A device in which access time is effectively independent of the location of the data. Information is entered and retrieved without reference to previously accessed data. (For example, a disk drive is a DASD, in contrast with a tape drive, which stores data as a linear sequence.) DASDs include both fixed and removable storage devices.

direct memory access (DMA). The transfer of data between memory and an input/output (I/O) device without processor intervention.

disk array controller (dac). A disk array controller device that represents the two controllers of an array. See also *disk array router*.

disk array router (dar). A disk array router that represents an entire array, including current and deferred paths to all logical unit numbers (LUNs) (hdisks on AIX). See also *disk array controller*.

DMA. See *direct memory access*.

domain. The most significant byte in the node port (N_port) identifier for the fibre-channel (FC) device. It is not used in the fibre channel-small computer system interface (FC-SCSI) hardware path ID. It is required to be the same for all SCSI targets logically connected to an FC adapter.

DRAM. See *dynamic random access memory*.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). A protocol defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force that is used for dynamically assigning Internet Protocol (IP) addresses to computers in a network.

dynamic random access memory (DRAM). A storage in which the cells require repetitive application of control signals to retain stored data.

ECC. See *error correction coding*.

EEPROM. See *electrically erasable programmable read-only memory*.

EISA. See *Extended Industry Standard Architecture*.

electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM). A type of memory chip which can retain its contents without consistent electrical power. Unlike the PROM which can be programmed only once, the EEPROM can be erased electrically. Because it can only be reprogrammed a limited number of times before it wears out, it is appropriate for storing small amounts of data that are changed infrequently.

electrostatic discharge (ESD). The flow of current that results when objects that have a static charge come into close enough proximity to discharge.

environmental service module (ESM) canister. A component in a storage expansion enclosure that monitors the environmental condition of the components in that enclosure. Not all storage subsystems have ESM canisters.

E_port. See *expansion port*.

error correction coding (ECC). A method for encoding data so that transmission errors can be detected and corrected by examining the data on the receiving end. Most ECCs are characterized by the maximum number of errors they can detect and correct.

ESD. See *electrostatic discharge*.

ESM canister. See *environmental service module canister*.

EXP. See *storage expansion enclosure*.

expansion port (E_port). A port that connects the switches for two fabrics.

Extended Industry Standard Architecture (EISA). A bus standard for IBM compatibles that extends the Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) bus architecture to 32 bits and allows more than one central processing unit (CPU) to share the bus. See also *Industry Standard Architecture*.

fabric. A Fibre Channel entity which interconnects and facilitates logins of N_ports attached to it. The fabric is responsible for routing frames between source and destination N_ports using address information in the frame header. A fabric can be as simple as a point-to-point channel between two N-ports, or as complex as a frame-routing switch that provides multiple and redundant internal pathways within the fabric between F_ports.

fabric port (F_port). In a fabric, an access point for connecting a user's N_port. An F_port facilitates N_port logins to the fabric from nodes connected to the fabric. An F_port is addressable by the N_port connected to it. See also *fabric*.

FAStT MSJ. See *FAStT Management Suite Java*.

FAStT Management Suite Java (FAStT MSJ). A diagnostic and configuration utility that can be used on Linux, Microsoft Windows, and Novell NetWare host systems. In Linux, it is also used with the QLRemote agent to define preferred and non-preferred paths for logical drives.

FC. See *fibre channel*.

FC-AL. See *arbitrated loop*.

feature enable identifier. A unique identifier for the storage subsystem, which is used in the process of generating a premium feature key. See also *premium feature key*.

fibre channel (FC). A set of standards for a serial input/output (I/O) bus capable of transferring data between two ports at up to 100 Mbps, with standards proposals to go to higher speeds. FC supports point-to-point, arbitrated loop, and switched topologies.

Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL). See *arbitrated loop*.

Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP) for small computer system interface (SCSI). A high-level fibre-channel mapping layer (FC-4) that uses lower-level fibre-channel (FC-PH) services to transmit SCSI commands, data, and status information between a SCSI initiator and a SCSI target across the FC link by using FC frame and sequence formats.

field replaceable unit (FRU). An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its components fails. In some cases, a field replaceable unit might contain other field replaceable units. Contrast with *customer replaceable unit (CRU)*.

FlashCopy. A premium feature for DS4000 that can make an instantaneous copy of the data in a volume.

F_port. See *fabric port*.

FRU. See *field replaceable unit*.

GBIC. See *gigabit interface converter*

gigabit interface converter (GBIC). A transceiver that performs serial, optical-to-electrical, and

electrical-to-optical signal conversions for high-speed networking. A GBIC can be hot swapped. See also *small form-factor pluggable*.

Global Copy. Refers to a remote logical drive mirror pair that is set up using asynchronous write mode without the write consistency group option. This is also referred to as ″Asynchronous Mirroring without Consistency Group.″ Global Copy does not ensure that write requests to multiple primary logical drives are carried out in the same order on the secondary logical drives as they are on the primary logical drives. If it is critical that writes to the primary logical drives are carried out in the same order in the appropriate secondary logical drives, Global Mirroring should be used instead of Global Copy. See also *asynchronous write mode*, *Global Mirroring*, *remote mirroring*, *Metro Mirroring*.

Global Mirroring. Refers to a remote logical drive mirror pair that is set up using asynchronous write mode with the write consistency group option. This is also referred to as ″Asynchronous Mirroring with Consistency Group.″ Global Mirroring ensures that write requests to multiple primary logical drives are carried out in the same order on the secondary logical drives as they are on the primary logical drives, preventing data on the secondary logical drives from becoming inconsistent with the data on the primary logical drives. See also *asynchronous write mode*, *Global Copy*, *remote mirroring*, *Metro Mirroring*.

graphical user interface (GUI). A type of computer interface that presents a visual metaphor of a real-world scene, often of a desktop, by combining high-resolution graphics, pointing devices, menu bars and other menus, overlapping windows, icons, and the object-action relationship.

GUI. See *graphical user interface.*

HBA. See *host bus adapter*.

hdisk. An AIX term representing a logical unit number (LUN) on an array.

host. A system that is directly attached to the storage subsystem through a fibre-channel input/output (I/O) path. This system is used to serve data (typically in the form of files) from the storage subsystem. A system can be both a storage management station and a host simultaneously.

host bus adapter (HBA). An interface between the fibre-channel network and a workstation or server.

host computer. See *host*.

host group. An entity in the storage partition topology that defines a logical collection of host computers that require shared access to one or more logical drives.

host port. Ports that physically reside on the host adapters and are automatically discovered by the DS4000 Storage Manager software. To give a host computer access to a partition, its associated host ports must be defined.

hot swap. To replace a hardware component without turning off the system.

hub. In a network, a point at which circuits are either connected or switched. For example, in a star network, the hub is the central node; in a star/ring network, it is the location of wiring concentrators.

IBMSAN driver. The device driver that is used in a Novell NetWare environment to provide multipath input/output (I/O) support to the storage controller.

IC. See *integrated circuit*.

IDE. See *integrated drive electronics*.

in-band. Transmission of management protocol over the fibre-channel transport.

Industry Standard Architecture (ISA). Unofficial name for the bus architecture of the IBM PC/XT personal computer. This bus design included expansion slots for plugging in various adapter boards. Early versions had an 8-bit data path, later expanded to 16 bits. The ″Extended Industry Standard Architecture″ (EISA) further expanded the data path to 32 bits. See also *Extended Industry Standard Architecture*.

initial program load (IPL). The initialization procedure that causes an operating system to commence operation. Also referred to as a system restart, system startup, and boot.

integrated circuit (IC). A microelectronic semiconductor device that consists of many interconnected transistors and other components. ICs are constructed on a small rectangle cut from a silicon crystal or other semiconductor material. The small size of these circuits allows high speed, low power dissipation, and reduced manufacturing cost compared with board-level integration. Also known as a *chip*.

integrated drive electronics (IDE). A disk drive interface based on the 16-bit IBM personal computer Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) in which the controller electronics reside on the drive itself, eliminating the need for a separate adapter card. Also known as an Advanced Technology Attachment Interface (ATA).

Internet Protocol (IP). A protocol that routes data through a network or interconnected networks. IP acts as an intermediary between the higher protocol layers and the physical network.

Internet Protocol (IP) address. The unique 32-bit address that specifies the location of each device or workstation on the Internet. For example, 9.67.97.103 is an IP address.

interrupt request (IRQ). A type of input found on many processors that causes the processor to suspend normal processing temporarily and start running an interrupt handler routine. Some processors have several interrupt request inputs that allow different priority interrupts.

IP. See *Internet Protocol*.

IPL. See *initial program load*.

IRQ. See *interrupt request*.

ISA. See *Industry Standard Architecture*.

Java Runtime Environment (JRE). A subset of the Java Development Kit (JDK) for end users and developers who want to redistribute the Java Runtime Environment (JRE). The JRE consists of the Java virtual machine, the Java Core Classes, and supporting files.

JRE. See *Java Runtime Environment*.

label. A discovered or user entered property value that is displayed underneath each device in the Physical and Data Path maps.

LAN. See *local area network*.

LBA. See *logical block address*.

local area network (LAN). A computer network located on a user's premises within a limited geographic area.

logical block address (LBA). The address of a logical block. Logical block addresses are typically used in hosts' I/O commands. The SCSI disk command protocol, for example, uses logical block addresses.

logical partition (LPAR). (1) A subset of a single system that contains resources (processors, memory, and input/output devices). A logical partition operates as an independent system. If hardware requirements are met, multiple logical partitions can exist within a system. (2) A fixed-size portion of a logical volume. A logical partition is the same size as the physical partitions in its volume group. Unless the logical volume of which it is a part is mirrored, each logical partition corresponds to, and its contents are stored on, a single physical partition. (3) One to three physical partitions (copies). The number of logical partitions within a logical volume is variable.

logical unit number (LUN). An identifier used on a small computer system interface (SCSI) bus to distinguish among up to eight devices (logical units) with the same SCSI ID.

loop address. The unique ID of a node in fibre-channel loop topology sometimes referred to as a loop ID.

loop group. A collection of storage area network (SAN) devices that are interconnected serially in a single loop circuit.

loop port. A node port (N_port) or fabric port (F_port) that supports arbitrated loop functions associated with an arbitrated loop topology.

LPAR. See *logical partition*.

LUN. See *logical unit number*.

MAC. See *medium access control*.

management information base (MIB). The information that is on an agent. It is an abstraction of configuration and status information.

man pages. In UNIX-based operating systems, online documentation for operating system commands, subroutines, system calls, file formats, special files, stand-alone utilities, and miscellaneous facilities. Invoked by the **man** command.

MCA. See *micro channel architecture*.

media scan. A media scan is a background process that runs on all logical drives in the storage subsystem for which it has been enabled, providing error detection on the drive media. The media scan process scans all logical drive data to verify that it can be accessed, and optionally scans the logical drive data also.

medium access control (MAC). In local area networks (LANs), the sublayer of the data link control layer that supports medium-dependent functions and uses the services of the physical layer to provide services to the logical link control sublayer. The MAC sublayer includes the method of determining when a device has access to the transmission medium.

Metro Mirroring. This term is used to refer to a remote logical drive mirror pair which is set up with synchronous write mode. See also *remote mirroring*, *Global Mirroring*.

MIB. See *management information base*.

micro channel architecture (MCA). Hardware that is used for PS/2 Model 50 computers and above to provide better growth potential and performance characteristics when compared with the original personal computer design.

Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS). MSCS, a feature of Windows NT Server (Enterprise Edition), supports the connection of two servers into a cluster for higher availability and easier manageability. MSCS can automatically detect and recover from server or

application failures. It can also be used to balance server workload and provide for planned maintenance.

mini hub. An interface card or port device that receives short-wave fiber channel GBICs or SFPs. These devices enable redundant fibre channel connections from the host computers, either directly or through a fibre channel switch or managed hub, over optical fiber cables to the DS4000 Storage Server controllers. Each DS4000 controller is responsible for two mini hubs. Each mini hub has two ports. Four host ports (two on each controller) provide a cluster solution without use of a switch. Two host-side mini hubs are shipped as standard. See also *host port, gigabit interface converter (GBIC), small form-factor pluggable (SFP)*.

mirroring. A fault-tolerance technique in which information on a hard disk is duplicated on additional hard disks. See also *remote mirroring*.

model. The model identification that is assigned to a device by its manufacturer.

MSCS. See *Microsoft Cluster Server*.

network management station (NMS). In the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), a station that runs management application programs that monitor and control network elements.

NMI. See *non-maskable interrupt*.

NMS. See *network management station*.

non-maskable interrupt (NMI). A hardware interrupt that another service request cannot overrule (mask). An NMI bypasses and takes priority over interrupt requests generated by software, the keyboard, and other such devices and is issued to the microprocessor only in disastrous circumstances, such as severe memory errors or impending power failures.

node. A physical device that allows for the transmission of data within a network.

node port (N_port). A fibre-channel defined hardware entity that performs data communications over the fibre-channel link. It is identifiable by a unique worldwide name. It can act as an originator or a responder.

nonvolatile storage (NVS). A storage device whose contents are not lost when power is cut off.

N_port. See *node port*.

NVS. See *nonvolatile storage*.

NVSRAM. Nonvolatile storage random access memory. See *nonvolatile storage*.

Object Data Manager (ODM). An AIX proprietary storage mechanism for ASCII stanza files that are edited as part of configuring a drive into the kernel.

ODM. See *Object Data Manager*.

out-of-band. Transmission of management protocols outside of the fibre-channel network, typically over Ethernet.

partitioning. See *storage partition*.

parity check. (1) A test to determine whether the number of ones (or zeros) in an array of binary digits is odd or even. (2) A mathematical operation on the numerical representation of the information communicated between two pieces. For example, if parity is odd, any character represented by an even number has a bit added to it, making it odd, and an information receiver checks that each unit of information has an odd value.

PCI local bus. See *peripheral component interconnect local bus*.

PDF. See *portable document format*.

performance events. Events related to thresholds set on storage area network (SAN) performance.

peripheral component interconnect local bus (PCI local bus). A local bus for PCs, from Intel, that provides a high-speed data path between the CPU and up to 10 peripherals (video, disk, network, and so on). The PCI bus coexists in the PC with the Industry Standard Architecture (ISA) or Extended Industry Standard Architecture (EISA) bus. ISA and EISA boards plug into an IA or EISA slot, while high-speed PCI controllers plug into a PCI slot. See also *Industry Standard Architecture*, *Extended Industry Standard Architecture*.

polling delay. The time in seconds between successive discovery processes during which discovery is inactive.

port. A part of the system unit or remote controller to which cables for external devices (such as display stations, terminals, printers, switches, or external storage units) are attached. The port is an access point for data entry or exit. A device can contain one or more ports.

portable document format (PDF). A standard specified by Adobe Systems, Incorporated, for the electronic distribution of documents. PDF files are compact; can be distributed globally by e-mail, the Web, intranets, or CD-ROM; and can be viewed with the Acrobat Reader, which is software from Adobe Systems that can be downloaded at no cost from the Adobe Systems home page.

premium feature key. A file that the storage subsystem controller uses to enable an authorized premium feature. The file contains the feature enable identifier of the storage subsystem for which the

premium feature is authorized, and data about the premium feature. See also *feature enable identifier*.

private loop. A freestanding arbitrated loop with no fabric attachment. See also *arbitrated loop*.

program temporary fix (PTF). A temporary solution or bypass of a problem diagnosed by IBM in a current unaltered release of the program.

PTF. See *program temporary fix*.

RAID. See *redundant array of independent disks (RAID)*.

RAID level. An array's RAID level is a number that refers to the method used to achieve redundancy and fault tolerance in the array. See also *array, redundant array of independent disks (RAID)*.

RAID set. See *array*.

RAM. See *random-access memory*.

random-access memory (RAM). A temporary storage location in which the central processing unit (CPU) stores and executes its processes. Contrast with *DASD*.

RDAC. See *redundant disk array controller*.

read-only memory (ROM). Memory in which stored data cannot be changed by the user except under special conditions.

recoverable virtual shared disk (RVSD). A virtual shared disk on a server node configured to provide continuous access to data and file systems in a cluster.

redundant array of independent disks (RAID). A collection of disk drives (*array*) that appears as a single volume to the server, which is fault tolerant through an assigned method of data striping, mirroring, or parity checking. Each array is assigned a RAID level, which is a specific number that refers to the method used to achieve redundancy and fault tolerance. See also *array, parity check, mirroring, RAID level, striping*.

redundant disk array controller (RDAC). (1) In hardware, a redundant set of controllers (either active/passive or active/active). (2) In software, a layer that manages the input/output (I/O) through the active controller during normal operation and transparently reroutes I/Os to the other controller in the redundant set if a controller or I/O path fails.

remote mirroring. Online, real-time replication of data between storage subsystems that are maintained on separate media. The Enhanced Remote Mirror Option is a DS4000 premium feature that provides support for remote mirroring. See also *Global Mirroring*, *Metro Mirroring*.

ROM. See *read-only memory*.

router. A computer that determines the path of network traffic flow. The path selection is made from several paths based on information obtained from specific protocols, algorithms that attempt to identify the shortest or best path, and other criteria such as metrics or protocol-specific destination addresses.

RVSD. See *recoverable virtual shared disk*.

SAI. See *Storage Array Identifier*.

SA Identifier. See *Storage Array Identifier*.

SAN. See *storage area network*.

SATA. See *serial ATA*.

scope. Defines a group of controllers by their Internet Protocol (IP) addresses. A scope must be created and defined so that dynamic IP addresses can be assigned to controllers on the network.

SCSI. See *small computer system interface*.

segmented loop port (SL_port). A port that allows division of a fibre-channel private loop into multiple segments. Each segment can pass frames around as an independent loop and can connect through the fabric to other segments of the same loop.

sense data. (1) Data sent with a negative response, indicating the reason for the response. (2) Data describing an I/O error. Sense data is presented to a host system in response to a sense request command.

serial ATA. The standard for a high-speed alternative to small computer system interface (SCSI) hard drives. The SATA-1 standard is equivalent in performance to a 10 000 RPM SCSI drive.

serial storage architecture (SSA). An interface specification from IBM in which devices are arranged in a ring topology. SSA, which is compatible with small computer system interface (SCSI) devices, allows full-duplex packet multiplexed serial data transfers at rates of 20 Mbps in each direction.

server. A functional hardware and software unit that delivers shared resources to workstation client units on a computer network.

server/device events. Events that occur on the server or a designated device that meet criteria that the user sets.

SFP. See *small form-factor pluggable*.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). In the Internet suite of protocols, a network management protocol that is used to monitor routers and attached networks. SNMP is an application layer protocol. Information on devices managed is defined and stored in the application's Management Information Base (MIB).

SL_port. See *segmented loop port*.

SMagent. The DS4000 Storage Manager optional Java-based host-agent software, which can be used on Microsoft Windows, Novell NetWare, HP-UX, and Solaris host systems to manage storage subsystems through the host fibre-channel connection.

SMclient. The DS4000 Storage Manager client software, which is a Java-based graphical user interface (GUI) that is used to configure, manage, and troubleshoot storage servers and storage expansion enclosures in a DS4000 storage subsystem. SMclient can be used on a host system or on a storage management station.

SMruntime. A Java compiler for the SMclient.

SMutil. The DS4000 Storage Manager utility software that is used on Microsoft Windows, HP-UX, and Solaris host systems to register and map new logical drives to the operating system. In Microsoft Windows, it also contains a utility to flush the cached data of the operating system for a particular drive before creating a FlashCopy.

small computer system interface (SCSI). A standard hardware interface that enables a variety of peripheral devices to communicate with one another.

small form-factor pluggable (SFP). An optical transceiver that is used to convert signals between optical fiber cables and switches. An SFP is smaller than a gigabit interface converter (GBIC). See also *gigabit interface converter*.

SNMP. See *Simple Network Management Protocol* and *SNMPv1*.

SNMP trap event. (1) (2) An event notification sent by the SNMP agent that identifies conditions, such as thresholds, that exceed a predetermined value. See also *Simple Network Management Protocol*.

SNMPv1. The original standard for SNMP is now referred to as SNMPv1, as opposed to SNMPv2, a revision of SNMP. See also *Simple Network Management Protocol*.

SRAM. See *static random access memory*.

SSA. See *serial storage architecture*.

static random access memory (SRAM). Random access memory based on the logic circuit know as flip-flop. It is called static because it retains a value as long as power is supplied, unlike dynamic random access memory (DRAM), which must be regularly refreshed. It is however, still volatile, meaning that it can lose its contents when the power is turned off.

storage area network (SAN). A dedicated storage network tailored to a specific environment, combining servers, storage products, networking products, software, and services. See also *fabric*.

Storage Array Identifier (SAI or SA Identifier). The Storage Array Identifier is the identification value used by the DS4000 Storage Manager host software (SMClient) to uniquely identify each managed storage server. The DS4000 Storage Manager SMClient program maintains Storage Array Identifier records of previously-discovered storage servers in the host resident file, which allows it to retain discovery information in a persistent fashion.

storage expansion enclosure (EXP). A feature that can be connected to a system unit to provide additional storage and processing capacity.

storage management station. A system that is used to manage the storage subsystem. A storage management station does not need to be attached to the storage subsystem through the fibre-channel input/output (I/O) path.

storage partition. Storage subsystem logical drives that are visible to a host computer or are shared among host computers that are part of a host group.

storage partition topology. In the DS4000 Storage Manager client, the Topology view of the Mappings window displays the default host group, the defined host group, the host computer, and host-port nodes. The host port, host computer, and host group topological elements must be defined to grant access to host computers and host groups using logical drive-to-LUN mappings.

striping. Splitting data to be written into equal blocks and writing blocks simultaneously to separate disk drives. Striping maximizes performance to the disks. Reading the data back is also scheduled in parallel, with a block being read concurrently from each disk then reassembled at the host.

subnet. An interconnected but independent segment of a network that is identified by its Internet Protocol (IP) address.

sweep method. A method of sending Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) requests for information to all the devices on a subnet by sending the request to every device in the network.

switch. A fibre-channel device that provides full bandwidth per port and high-speed routing of data by using link-level addressing.

switch group. A switch and the collection of devices connected to it that are not in other groups.

switch zoning. See *zoning*.

synchronous write mode. In remote mirroring, an option that requires the primary controller to wait for the

acknowledgment of a write operation from the secondary controller before returning a write I/O request completion to the host. See also *asynchronous write mode*, *remote mirroring*, *Metro Mirroring*.

system name. Device name assigned by the vendor's third-party software.

TCP. See *Transmission Control Protocol*.

TCP/IP. See *Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol*.

terminate and stay resident program (TSR program). A program that installs part of itself as an extension of DOS when it is executed.

topology. The physical or logical arrangement of devices on a network. The three fibre-channel topologies are fabric, arbitrated loop, and point-to-point. The default topology for the disk array is arbitrated loop.

TL_port. See *translated loop port*.

transceiver. A device that is used to transmit and receive data. Transceiver is an abbreviation of transmitter-receiver.

translated loop port (TL_port). A port that connects to a private loop and allows connectivity between the private loop devices and off loop devices (devices not connected to that particular TL_port).

Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). A communication protocol used in the Internet and in any network that follows the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standards for internetwork protocol. TCP provides a reliable host-to-host protocol between hosts in packed-switched communication networks and in interconnected systems of such networks. It uses the Internet Protocol (IP) as the underlying protocol.

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP). A set of communication protocols that provide peer-to-peer connectivity functions for both local and wide-area networks.

trap. In the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), a message sent by a managed node (agent function) to a management station to report an exception condition.

trap recipient. Receiver of a forwarded Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) trap. Specifically, a trap receiver is defined by an Internet Protocol (IP) address and port to which traps are sent. Presumably, the actual recipient is a software application running at the IP address and listening to the port.

TSR program. See *terminate and stay resident program*.

uninterruptible power supply. A source of power from a battery that is installed between a computer system and its power source. The uninterruptible power supply keeps the system running if a commercial power failure occurs, until an orderly shutdown of the system can be performed.

user action events. Actions that the user takes, such as changes in the storage area network (SAN), changed settings, and so on.

worldwide port name (WWPN). A unique identifier for a switch on local and global networks.

worldwide name (WWN). A globally unique 64-bit identifier assigned to each Fibre Channel port.

WORM. See *write-once read-many*.

write-once read many (WORM). Any type of storage medium to which data can be written only a single time, but can be read from any number of times. After the data is recorded, it cannot be altered.

WWN. See *worldwide name*.

zoning. (1) In Fibre Channel environments, the grouping of multiple ports to form a virtual, private, storage network. Ports that are members of a zone can communicate with each other, but are isolated from ports in other zones. (2) A function that allows segmentation of nodes by address, name, or physical port and is provided by fabric switches or hubs.

Index

A

about this document xi
access volume/logical drive 4, 13, 32, 58, 77, 100, 138, 139
additional storage
  See storage expansion enclosures
address
  for e-mail comments xvii
  for reader comment form xvii
  of IBM xvii
  of the IBM director of licensing 215
agent software
  AIX 34
  HP-UX 76
  package info 10
  Red Hat Linux 145
  Solaris 98
AIX
  boot restrictions 31
  client software 33
  concurrent firmware download 36
  configuration of storage subsystems 35
  direct-attached configuration 42
  dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) 64
  dynamic volume expansion (DVE) 64
  fast I/O failure 63
  FCP disk array errors 66
  fget_config command 50
  firmware
    requirements 27
    upgrading 38
  hardware requirements 27, 30
  identifying
    controller ID numbers 47
    device names and bus numbers 48
    FlashCopy logical drive types 54
    logical drives by operating system device names 53
  logical drives, redistributing in case of failure 68
  lsattr command 52
  lsdev command 48
  NVSRAM
    requirements 27
    upgrading 39
  operating system requirements 27
  RDAC driver
    configuring 45
    installing 43, 45
    requirements 43
  requirements
    client software 33
    firmware 27
    hardware 27, 30
    operating system 27
    RDAC driver 43
    software 30
    system 30
AIX *(continued)*
  restrictions 31
  SAN-attached configuration 42
  SMagent 34
  SMclient 34
  SMruntime 33
  software requirements 30
  staged controller firmware download 36
  system requirements 30
  verifying configuration 47
alert notifications, configuring 175
appware
  AIX firmware 27
  HP-UX firmware 69
  Red Hat Linux firmware 133
  Solaris firmware 91
  SUSE Linux firmware 133
attributes
  dac 61, 62
  dar 61
  hdisk 60, 61, 62
  LUN 60, 61, 62
  RDAC driver 45
audience of this document xi
Auto Volume Transfer (AVT) 90, 130

B

boot, AIX restrictions 31
BOOTP server
  sample network 15, 20
bus numbers and device names, identifying 48

C

cache mirroring 62, 67, 183
capture state information feature 176
catastrophic failure 176
check drive firmware level 201, 202
client software
  AIX 33, 34
  HP-UX 74, 75
  package info 9, 10
  Red Hat Linux 143, 144
    prerequisites 142
  Solaris 96, 97
cluster services
  AIX requirements 182
  configurations 171
  HACMP ES and ESCRM 182
  hardware requirements 180
  HP-UX requirements 180
  MC/Service Guard 179, 191
  PSSP with GPFS 182
  Solaris requirements 180, 181
  system dependencies 179
  VERITAS Cluster Server 180

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2005

cluster services *(continued)*
VERITAS Volume Manager 180
comments about this document, how to send xvii
Concepts Guide xiii
concurrent download
controller firmware 36, 79, 101, 146
ESM firmware 199
configuration
details, MC Service Guard 191
file
modifying, Red Hat Linux 142
modifying, Solaris (JNI HBAs) 109
recovery 176
configuring
alert notifications 175
direct-attached 42, 84, 106, 150
RDAC driver 45, 181
SAN-attached 42, 84, 107, 150
Solaris with JNI host bus adapter cards 107, 109
Solaris with QLogic host bus adapter cards 107
storage subsystems
AIX 35, 42
HP-UX 77, 84
initial automatic discovery 171
Red Hat Linux 150
Solaris 100, 106, 107
SUSE Linux 150
controller state capture 176
controllers
firmware 1, 77, 100
ID numbers, identifying 47
IP addresses 20
copy services
enabling premium features 26
overview of premium features 23
Copy Services Guide xiii

D

dac (disk array controller)
and fget_config command 50
and lsattr command 52
and RDAC 45
attributes 61, 62
identifying controller ID numbers 47
showing status and location 49
daisy-chain configuration 42
dar (disk array router)
and fget_config command 50
and lsattr command 52
and RDAC 45
attributes 61
showing status 48
two dars on one subsystem, causes 46
DCE (dynamic capacity expansion) 64, 168
default host type, changing
AIX 40
HP-UX 83
Red Hat Linux 153
Solaris 105
SUSE Linux 151
device drivers
DMP
configuring VERITAS Volume Manager for 125
DMP, installing 119
downloading latest versions 2
RDAC
AIX, file sets 43
description 10
installing 43, 117
viewing attributes 45
with HACMP cluster 182
devices
identification 45
names and bus numbers, identifying 48
DHCP server
sample network 15, 20
direct management method
See out-of-band (direct) management method
direct-attached configuration 42, 84, 106, 150
disk array controller
See dac
disk array router
See dar
disk configuration information 176
DMP
See Dynamic Multipathing (DMP)
documentation
documents 2
DS4000 203
DS4000 Storage Manager xiii
DS4000-related documents 207
DS4100 SATA Storage Server 206
DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server 205
DS4400 Fibre Channel Storage Server 204
DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server 203
files 2
online help 4, 172, 176
Web sites xvi
drive firmware download 200
drive firmware, level 201, 202
drivers
See device drivers
DS4000 documentation xiii, 203
DS4000 Hardware Maintenance Manual 207
DS4000 Problem Determination Guide 207
DS4000 Quick Start Guide 207
DS4000 Storage Manager
documentation xiii
related documents 207
DS4000/FAStT product renaming xi
DS4100
restrictions 4
usage notes 4
DS4100 SATA Storage Server library 206
DS4300
restrictions 4, 21
usage notes 4, 21
DS4300 Fibre Channel Storage Server library 205
DS4400 Storage Server library 204
DS4500 Fibre Channel Storage Server library 203
DVE (dynamic volume expansion) 64, 168

dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) 64, 168
Dynamic Multipathing (DMP)
  configuring VERITAS Volume Manager for 125
  description 10
  disabling 180
  installing 119
  installing the SMibmasl package 125
  installing VERITAS Volume Manager packages 122
  preparing for installation 120
  system requirements 119
dynamic tracking 64
dynamic volume expansion (DVE) 64, 168

E

e-mail address xvii, 175
edition notice ii
enabling
  multipath I/O with PV-links 84
  premium features 26
Enhanced Remote Mirror Option 24
Enterprise Management window
  description 9
  online help 5
errors, FCP disk array 66
ESM firmware download 197
Ethernet
  and out-of-band (direct) management 13
  managing subsystems through 13
  setting up subsystems with 35, 78, 145
  Solaris requirements 94, 180

F

fabric switch environment 209
failure support
  cluster services 179
  DMP driver 10
  RDAC driver 10
  redistributing logical drives 68, 90, 130
fast I/O failure 63
FAStT/DS4000 product renaming xi
FC switch zoning 209
FCP disk array errors 66
fcsci attributes 63, 64
feature activation code 26
feature enable identifier 26
feedback about this document, sending to IBM xvii
fget_config command 50
file sets 43
firmware
  AIX
    concurrent firmware download 36
    downloading latest versions 35
    requirements 27
    staged controller firmware download 36
    upgrading 38
  description 1
  drive 200
  ESM 197
firmware *(continued)*
  HP-UX
    concurrent firmware download 79
    downloading latest versions 78
    requirements 69
    staged controller firmware download 79
    upgrading 81
  Red Hat Linux
    concurrent firmware download 146
    downloading latest versions 146
    requirements 133
    staged controller firmware download 146
    upgrading 149
  restrictions 4, 10, 11, 21, 22, 23, 24, 34, 37, 76, 79, 98, 101, 145, 147, 197
  Solaris
    concurrent firmware download 101
    downloading latest versions 101
    requirements 91
    staged controller firmware download 101
    upgrading 103
  SUSE Linux
    concurrent firmware download 146
    downloading latest versions 146
    requirements 133
    staged controller firmware download 146
    upgrading 149
FlashCopy
  disk array error messages (AIX) 67
  identifying logical drive types 54
  overview 23

G

General Parallel File System (GPFS) 182
glossary 217

H

HACMP
  See High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing (HACMP)
hardware installation process xii
hardware requirements
  AIX 27, 30
  HP-UX 69, 72
  Red Hat Linux 133, 136
  Solaris 91, 94
  SUSE Linux 133, 136
HBA
  See host bus adapters
HBA in switch environment 209
hdisk
  and fget_config command 50
  and lsattr command 52
  and RDAC 45
  attributes 60, 61, 62
  determining preferred path 49
  setting queue depth 60
  showing status and location 49
  verification 45

heterogeneous environment 171
High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing (HACMP) 182
high-availability cluster services 179
host bus adapters
  AIX
    defining host groups 39
    displaying a list 40
    in a direct-attached configuration 42
    in a SAN-attached configuration 42
    setting host ports 39
    single HBA configuration 42
  Emulex (Red Hat Linux)
    downloading driver package 140
  HP-UX
    defining host groups 82
    displaying a list 82
    in a direct-attached configuration 84
    in a SAN-attached configuration 84
    setting host ports 82
  Red Hat Linux
    defining host groups 152
    displaying a list 153
    in a direct-attached configuration 150
    in a SAN-attached configuration 150
    setting host ports 151
    single HBA configuration 150
  Solaris
    in a direct-attached configuration 106
    in a SAN-attached configuration 107
    JNI settings 107, 109, 193
    QLogic settings 116, 196
    setting host ports 104
  SUSE Linux
    defining host groups 151
    displaying a list 152
    downloading driver package 139
    in a direct-attached configuration 150
    setting host ports 151
    single HBA configuration 150
host group, defining
  AIX 39
  HP-UX 82
  Red Hat Linux 151
  Solaris 104
  SUSE Linux 151
host software
  AIX 34
  HP-UX 75, 76
  package info 10
  Red Hat Linux 144, 145
  Solaris 98
host type, changing default
  AIX 40
  HP-UX 83
  Red Hat Linux 153
  Solaris 105
  SUSE Linux 151
host-agent management method
  See in-band (host-agent) management method
how to send your comments xvii
HP-UX
  client software 74
  cluster services, requirements 180
  concurrent firmware download 79
  configuration of storage subsystems 77
  direct-attached configuration 84
  firmware
    requirements 69
    upgrading 81
  hardware requirements 69, 72
  host software
    installing 75
    requirements 76
  logical drives, redistributing in case of failure 90
  NVSRAM
    requirements 69
    upgrading 82
  PV-links 84
  requirements
    client software 74
    cluster services 180
    firmware 69
    hardware 69, 72
    host software 76
    NVSRAM 69
    software 72
    system 72
  SAN-attached configuration 84
  SMagent 76
  SMclient 75
  SMruntime 74
  SMutil 76
  software requirements 72
  staged controller firmware download 79
  system requirements 72

I

IBM
  address xvii
  director of licensing address 215
  e-mail address xvii, 175
IBM Safety Information 207
in-band (host-agent) management method
  advantages 12
  description 11
  diagram 15
  disadvantages 12
  utm device 45
  with SMagent software 10, 34, 76, 98
installation planning xii
installation process xii
installing
  AIX
    client software 33, 34
    RDAC driver 43
  client software
    AIX 33
    HP-UX 74
    Red Hat Linux 143
    SMclient 34, 75, 97, 144

installing *(continued)*
client software *(continued)*
SMruntime 33, 74, 96, 144
Solaris 96
host software
HP-UX 75
SMagent 34, 76, 98, 145
SMutil 76, 99, 144
Solaris 98
HP-UX
client software 74, 75
host software 75, 76
process diagram for 16
Red Hat Linux
client software 143, 144
sequence of 10
Solaris
client software 96, 97
host software 98, 99
RDAC driver 117
Intermix 5
interoperability
AIX restrictions 32
Red Hat Linux restrictions 139
IP addresses for DS4000 controllers 20

J

JNI
cards 107, 109
installing driver 107
modifying HBA settings 109, 112
settings 193

L

Linux (Red Hat)
client software 143
prerequisites 142
concurrent firmware download 146
direct-attached configuration 150
firmware
requirements 133
upgrading 149
hardware requirements 133
installing HBA kit 140
modifying configuration file 142
modifying ramdisk 142
NVSRAM
requirements 133
upgrading 149
requirements
client software 143
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
operating system 133
software 136
system 136
restrictions 138
SAN-attached configuration 150
SMagent 145
SMclient 144
SMruntime 144
SMutil 144
Linux (SUSE)
concurrent firmware download 146
direct-attached configuration 150
dynamic capacity expansion (DCE) 168
dynamic volume expansion (DVE) 168
firmware
requirements 133
upgrading 149
hardware requirements 133
NVSRAM
requirements 133
upgrading 149
requirements
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
operating system 133
software 136
system 136
restrictions 137
staged controller firmware download 146
load balancing 56
load_balancing attribute 56
logical drives
creating from free or unconfigured capacity 173
expected usage 175
redistributing in case of failure 68, 90, 130
wizard 173
loop settings 109, 112
lsattr command 52
lsdev command 48
LUNs
and access volumes 13
and fget_config command 50
attributes 60, 61, 62
mapping to a partition
AIX 41
HP-UX 83
Red Hat Linux 154
Solaris 105
SUSE Linux 154
maximum number per partition 21

M

management method
in-band (host-agent) 11
out-of-band (direct) 13
management station 4
description 4
for SUSE Linux 133, 141
mapping
host group
AIX 39
HP-UX 82
Red Hat Linux 152
Solaris 105
SUSE Linux 151

mapping *(continued)*
LUNs, to a partition
AIX 41
HP-UX 83
Red Hat Linux 154
Solaris 105
SUSE Linux 154
SMutil 10
MC/Service Guard 179, 191
Migration Guide xiii
minihubs 31, 42, 84, 106, 138, 150
multipath
and AIX fast I/O failure 63
DMP, installing on Solaris 119
PV-links, using on HP-UX 84
RDAC
AIX devices 45
installing on AIX 43
installing on Solaris 117
Storage Manager software package 8
redistributing logical drives
AIX 68
HP-UX 90
Solaris 130

N

new features in this edition 5
notice, edition ii
notices
general 215
NVSRAM
AIX
concurrent download 36
requirements 27, 28
upgrading 39
downloading latest versions 35, 78, 101, 146
HP-UX
concurrent download 79
requirements 69, 70
upgrading 82
Linux on POWER
requirements 134
Red Hat Linux
concurrent download 146
requirements 133, 134
upgrading 149
Solaris
concurrent download 101
requirements 91, 92
upgrading 104
SUSE Linux
concurrent download 146
requirements 133, 134
upgrading 149

O

Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes
definitions 56
initial device identification 46
Object Data Manager (ODM) attributes *(continued)*
lsattr command 61
switch_retries and concurrent download 36
viewing and setting 55
online help xii, 4, 172, 176
operating system
AIX
requirements 27, 30
HP-UX
requirements 69, 72
Red Hat Linux
requirements 133, 136
Solaris
requirements 91, 94
SUSE Linux
requirements 133, 136
out-of-band (direct) management method
advantages 14
description 13
diagram 15
disadvantages 14
process diagram 16
setting IP addresses 20
overview of heterogeneous hosts 171

P

Parallel System Support Programs (PSSP) 182
partitioning
See Storage Partitioning
performance
in-band (host-agent) management disadvantage 12
ODM attribute settings and 60
out-of-band (direct) management advantage 14
planning 21
premium features
copy services 23
enabling 26
Intermix 5
Storage Partitioning
description 24
host group 39, 82, 104, 151
Web site 26
prerequisites
AIX
client software 33
firmware 27
hardware 27, 30
RDAC driver 43
software 30
system 30
cluster services 180
HP-UX
client software 74
cluster services 180
firmware 69
hardware 69, 72
host software 76
NVSRAM 69
software 72
system 72

prerequisites *(continued)*
Red Hat Linux
client software 142, 143
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
software 136
system 136
Solaris
client software 96
cluster services 180, 181
firmware 91
hardware 91, 94
host software 98
NVSRAM 91
RDAC driver 98
software 94
system 94
SUSE Linux
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
software 136
system 136
products, developed 215
profile, storage subsystem
saving 37, 79, 102, 147, 176
viewing 37, 79, 102, 147
PV-links 84

Q

QLogic
cards 107
installing adapter driver 115
settings 196
queue depth for hdisk devices 60

R

ramdisk, modifying (Red Hat Linux) 142
RDAC driver
AIX
attributes 45
configuring 45
installing 43, 45
requirements 43
description 10
IDs 181
Solaris
installing 117
requirements 98
reader comment form xvii
readme files, finding online 2
recover configuration 176
Red Hat Linux
See Linux (Red Hat)
redistributing logical drives in case of failure
AIX 68
HP-UX 90
Solaris 130
Remote Mirror Option 24
renaming xi
renaming storage subsystem 176
requirements
AIX
client software 33
firmware 27
hardware 27, 30
RDAC driver 43
software 30
system 30
cluster services 180
HP-UX
client software 74
cluster services 180
firmware 69
hardware 69, 72
host software 76
NVSRAM 69
software 72
system 72
Red Hat Linux
client software 143
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
software 136
system 136
Solaris
client software 96
cluster services 180, 181
firmware 91
hardware 91, 94
host software 98
NVSRAM 91
RDAC driver 98
software 94
system 94
SUSE Linux
firmware 133
hardware 133, 136
software 136
system 136
resources
documents 2
e-mail address xvii, 175
files 2
online help 4, 172, 176
Web sites xvi, 26
restrictions
AIX 31
DS4100 4, 23, 24
DS4300 4, 21
EXP100 197
firmware 4, 10, 11, 21, 22, 23, 24, 34, 37, 76, 79, 98, 101, 145, 147, 197
in-band (host-agent) management 11
Red Hat Linux 138
SUSE Linux 137
RHEL
See Linux (Red Hat)
runtime software
package info 9

S

SAN-attached configuration 31, 42, 84, 107, 137, 138, 150
SATA 9, 28, 70, 92, 134
sending your comments to IBM xvii
services offered in the U.S.A. 215
setting
  IP addresses 20
  NMS for SNMP notification 175
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) notification 175
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps 15, 20
SLES
  See Linux (SUSE)
SMagent
  description 10
  installing
    AIX 34
    HP-UX 76
    Red Hat Linux 145
    Solaris 98
  software installation sequence 10
SMclient
  components 9
  description 9
  Enterprise Management window 9
  installing
    AIX 34
    HP-UX 75
    Red Hat Linux 144
    Solaris 97
  software installation sequence 10
  Subsystem Management window 9
SMruntime
  description 9
  installing
    AIX 33
    HP-UX 74
    Red Hat Linux 144
    Solaris 96
  software installation sequence 10
SMutil
  description 10
  installing
    HP-UX 76
    Red Hat Linux 144
    Solaris 99
  software installation sequence 10
snapware
  AIX firmware 27
  HP-UX firmware 69
  Red Hat Linux firmware 133
  Solaris firmware 91
  SUSE Linux firmware 133
SNMP
  notification 175
  traps 15
SNMP traps 20
software installation process xii
software package
  RDAC 10
  SMagent 10
  SMclient 9
  SMruntime 9
  SMutil 10
software requirements
  AIX 30
  HP-UX 72
  Red Hat Linux 136
  Solaris 94
  SUSE Linux 136
Solaris
  client software 96
  cluster services requirements 180, 181
  concurrent firmware download 101
  configuration of storage subsystem 100
  direct-attached configuration 106
  DMP 119, 122, 125, 129
  firmware
    requirements 91
    upgrading 103
  hardware requirements 91, 94
  host software 98
  JNI host bus adapter cards 107, 109
  logical drives, redistributing in case of failure 130
  NVSRAM
    requirements 91
    upgrading 104
  QLogic host bus adapter cards 107
  RDAC driver
    installing 117
    requirements 98
  requirements
    client software 96
    cluster services 180
    firmware 91
    hardware 91, 94
    host software 98
    NVSRAM 91
    RDAC driver 98
    software 94
    system 94
  SAN-attached configuration 107
  SMagent, installing 98
  SMclient, installing 97
  SMruntime, installing 96
  SMutil, installing 99
  software requirements 94
  staged controller firmware download 101
  system requirements 94
  VERITAS 119, 122, 125, 129
staged controller firmware download
  AIX 36
  HP-UX 79
  Red Hat Linux 146
  Solaris 101
starpubs xvii
storage area network (SAN)
  configuration
    AIX 42

storage area network (SAN) *(continued)*
configuration *(continued)*
HP-UX 84
Red Hat Linux 150
Solaris 107
technical support Web site xvii
storage expansion enclosures
EXP100 9, 27, 28, 70, 92, 133, 134
EXP500 27, 69, 91, 133
EXP700 27, 69, 91, 133
storage management station 4
description 4, 133, 141
Storage Manager software
installation sequence 10
introduction 4
list of software packages 8
new features 5, 8
not supported on SUSE Linux on POWER 133, 141
removing previous versions 143
where to obtain 4
Storage Partitioning
AIX restrictions 31
and host groups
AIX 39
HP-UX 82
Red Hat Linux 151
Solaris 104
SUSE Linux 151
configuring storage partitions 174
max. number of LUNs per partition 21
overview 24
Red Hat Linux restrictions 139
SUSE Linux restrictions 138
with clusters 180
storage subsystem
adding to SMclient
AIX 35
HP-UX 78
Red Hat Linux 145
Solaris 100
SUSE Linux 145
cluster services 179
configuring
AIX 35
HP-UX 77
procedures 171
Solaris 100
initial automatic discovery 171
introduction 4
logical drives
identifying by operating system device names 53
management methods
example showing both types 15
in-band (host-agent) 11
out-of-band (direct) 13
management tasks 176
profile, saving 176
renaming 176
Subsystem Management window
description 9
online help 5
SUSE Linux
See Linux (SUSE)
switch
in a SAN-attached configuration 42, 84, 107, 150
modifying JNI HBA settings 109, 112
modifying QLogic HBA settings 116
technical support Web site xvii
zoning 42, 84, 107, 150
switch environment 209
system requirements
AIX 30
HP-UX 72
Red Hat Linux 136
Solaris 94
SUSE Linux 136

T

tasks by document title xiii
tasks by documentation title 203
trademarks 216

U

universal transport mechanism
See utm device
upgrading
firmware
AIX 38
HP-UX 81
Red Hat Linux 149
Solaris 103
SUSE Linux 149
NVSRAM
AIX 39
HP-UX 82
Red Hat Linux 149
Solaris 104
SUSE Linux 149
util software
Red Hat Linux 144
utility software
package info 10
utm device 45

V

variable settings for JNI adapter cards 109
VERITAS
Cluster Server 180
Dynamic Multipathing (DMP) 10, 119, 120, 122, 125, 180
Enterprise Administrator 129
File System 119, 125
Volume Manager 10, 119, 122, 125, 180
VolumeCopy 23

W

Web sites 181
AIX fix delivery center xvi, 44
downloading AIX file sets 44
DS4000 interoperability matrix xvi
DS4000 storage servers xvi
DS4000 technical support xvii, 28, 70, 92, 134
IBM publications center xvii
IBM TotalStorage products xvi
Linux on POWER support xvii
Linux on pSeries support xvi
list xvi
premium feature activation xvii, 26
readme files xvi, 28, 70, 92, 134
SAN support xvii
Solaris failover driver info 119
Solaris HBA driver info 108, 115
switch support xvii

Z

zoning 209
zoning switches 42, 84, 107, 150

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9
Installation and Support Guide for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux on POWER

Publication No. GC26-7705-01

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Complete	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Easy to find	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Easy to understand	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Well organized	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Applicable to your tasks	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name _____ Address _____

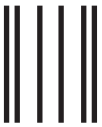
Company or Organization _____

Phone No. _____

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You
GC26-7705-01

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape | **Please do not staple** | Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

International Business Machines Corporation
Information Development
Department GZW
9000 South Rita Road
Tucson, Arizona
USA 85744-0001

Fold and Tape | **Please do not staple** | Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Printed in USA

GC26-7705-01

Spine information:

IBM TotalStorage DS4000 Storage Manager Version 9

Installation and Support for AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux on POWER